

МИНИСТЕРСТВО ОБРАЗОВАНИЯ РЕСПУБЛИКИ БЕЛАРУСЬ  
Минский государственный лингвистический университет

**О. В. Аношина М. Д. Крымовская И. В. Чучкевич**

**ПРАКТИЧЕСКАЯ ГРАММАТИКА  
АНГЛИЙСКОГО ЯЗЫКА  
В ПОДГОТОВКЕ СПЕЦИАЛИСТОВ ПО ПЕРЕВОДУ**

*Рекомендовано учебно-методическим объединением  
по лингвистическому образованию в качестве пособия  
для студентов учреждений высшего образования,  
обучающихся по специальности 1-21 06 01-02  
«Современные иностранные языки (перевод)»*

Минск МГЛУ  
2021

УДК 811.111'36(075.8)  
ББК 81.432.1–923.132  
А69

**Рецензенты:** кандидат филологических наук, доцент  
*Е. А. Бухаткина* (МГЛУ); кандидат филологических наук, доцент  
*Т. В. Караичева* (БГУ)

**Аношина, О. В.**

А69 Практическая грамматика английского языка в подготовке специалистов по переводу: учебное пособие для студентов учреждений высшего образования, обучающихся по специальности 1-21 06 01-02 «Современные иностранные языки (перевод)» / О. В. Аношина, М. Д. Крымовская, И. В. Чучкевич. – Минск : МГЛУ, 2021. – 224 с.

ISBN 978-985-28-0031-0

Пособие предназначено для формирования и совершенствования грамматических навыков у будущих переводчиков.

В пособие включены темы в соответствии с программой дисциплины «Практическая грамматика». Содержит теоретическую часть, а также практические задания для аудиторной и самостоятельной работы.

Адресуется студентам 2 курса переводческого факультета МГЛУ.

УДК 811.111'36(075.8)  
ББК 81.432.1–923.132

ISBN 978-985-28-0031-0

© Аношина О. В., Крымовская М. Д.,  
Чучкевич И. В., 2021  
© УО «Минский государственный  
лингвистический университет», 2021

## CONTENTS

<b>THE INDICATIVE MOOD</b> .....	5
The Present Tenses .....	5
The Past Tenses .....	10
The Perfect Tenses .....	14
The Future Tenses .....	19
The Sequence of Tenses .....	25
The Passive Voice .....	31
HOW TO COMMENT on Tenses .....	34
Examples of Comments .....	35
Answer Key .....	35
<b>THE OBLIQUE MOODS</b> .....	44
Temporal Relations within the Oblique Moods .....	45
The Oblique Moods in Simple Sentences .....	46
Lesson 1. Moods in Simple Sentences .....	50
Lesson 2. Oblique Moods in Simple Sentences .....	57
The Oblique Moods in Nominal and Attributive Clauses.....	62
A. Subjunctive II in Nominal and Attributive Clauses .....	63
Lesson 3. Subjunctive II in Object Clauses after <i>Would Rather</i> and <i>Wish</i> in the Main Clause.....	66
Lesson 4. Subjunctive II in Attributive Clauses after <i>It's time</i> , Predicative Clauses after <i>as if</i> , after the Expression of <i>doubt</i> .....	76
B. The Suppositional Mood and Subjunctive I in Nominal and Attributive Clauses .....	84
Lesson 5. The Suppositional Mood in Nominal and Attributive Clauses after Modal Meaning in the Main Clause .....	86
Lesson 6. The Suppositional Mood in Nominal Clauses and Attributive Clauses after Fear and Emotion in the Main Clause .....	93
Lesson 7. The Oblique Moods in Nominal and Attributive Clauses. Revision.....	98
The Oblique Moods in Adverbial Clauses .....	104

Lesson 8. Adverbial Clauses of Real and Unreal Condition and Concession .....	109
Lesson 9. Adverbial Clauses of Unreal Condition and Concession Referring to the Past and of Mixed Type.....	118
Lesson 10. Adverbial Clauses of Comparison and Problematic Condition.....	130
Lesson 11. Inversion in Adverbial Clauses of Condition. Adverbial Clauses of Problematic Concession and Purpose .....	136
Lesson 12. Revision of the Oblique Moods .....	143
Lesson 13. Revision of the Oblique Moods. Getting Ready for the Oral and Written Test .....	151
Summary Tables .....	154
Commentary on the Oblique Moods .....	156
Translation .....	162
<b>THE ARTICLE</b> .....	165
The Functions of Articles .....	165
HOW TO COMMENT on Articles .....	169
Articles with Abstract Nouns .....	177
Articles with Proper Names .....	185
Articles with Personal Names .....	185
Articles with Geographical Names.....	190
Articles with Miscellaneous Proper Names .....	196
The Use of Articles in Some Syntactic Patterns .....	203
Articles. Revision .....	211
Articles. Self-Check .....	218
Answer Key .....	219
References .....	221

# THE INDICATIVE MOOD

## THE PRESENT TENSES

### The Present Simple (Indefinite) Tense Forms

Affirmative		Negative			Interrogative		
I we you they	<i>play</i>	I we you they	<i>do not (don't)</i>	<i>play</i>	<i>do</i>	I we you they	<i>play</i>
he she it	<i>plays</i>	he she it	<i>does not (doesn't)</i>		<i>does</i>	he she it	

**The Present Simple (Indefinite) Tense** is used to denote:

1) **present actions:**

a) regular activities and events;

*They always **go out** on Sundays.*

*We never **come** late from work.*

b) permanent characteristics and properties;

*British people **drink** a lot of tea.*

*He **works** as a teacher.*

c) universal truths and generalizations;

*Summer **follows** spring.*

*A drowning man **catches** a straw.*

d) timetables, itineraries, working hours.

*We **arrive** in Minsk at 5 p.m.*

*The film **starts** at 8.30.*

*The shop **closes** at 6.*

2) **present actions** happening at the **moment of speaking:**

a) with stative verbs of:

sense perception: *see, taste, smell, sound, hear, notice, perceive;*

emotions: *like, want, love, wish, adore, detest, abhor;*

mental activity: *think, believe, know, consider, agree, mean, understand, seem, suppose;*

b) with other verbs: *be, belong, consist of, have, owe, own, matter, need;*

*That soup **smells** delicious.*

*Do you **know** what I **mean**?*

*The house **has** three rooms.*

c) in stage directions, sports commentaries, instructions, demonstrations;

*Now I **peel** the apples, **slice** them and **put** into the bowl.*

d) in set expressions ***Here comes** ..., **There goes** ....*

***Here comes** the dean and the students. **There goes** the train to London.*

**Note!** Some stative verbs can be used in the Present Continuous Tense if they transform their meaning from a state to an activity.

*That soup **smells** delicious. (state) – I **am tasting** the soup. (activity)*

*I **consider** he is right. (state) – I **am considering** whether or not to apply for this job. (activity)*

*I **have** a car. (state) – I **am having** a shower now. (activity)*

3) **past actions in summaries of historical events;**

*In May 1979 Margaret Thatcher **becomes** the first woman Prime Minister in the history of Great Britain.*

4) **future actions:**

a) in subordinate clauses of time and condition (that are usually introduced by the conjunctions *when, as soon as, until, if, unless, in case*, etc.);

*I'll call you as soon as I **come** back home.*

*If it rains we'll stay at home.*

b) timetables, itineraries, working hours;

*The flight **leaves** at 2 p.m. tomorrow.*

c) in suggestions, offers.

*Why **don't** you **join** us in the cafe?*

5) **main events in storytelling** (plots of films, books; jokes, anecdotes).

*There is this Scotsman, you see, and he's walking through the jungle when he **meets** gorilla. And the gorilla's eating a snake sandwich. So the Scotsman **goes up** to the gorilla and **says** ...*

**Typical time expressions:** *always, usually, generally, occasionally, frequently, sometimes, often, twice a year, once a week, every day, every other day, once a while, from time to time, hardly ever, seldom, rarely, daily, weekly, monthly.*

### The Present Continuous Tense Forms

Affirmative			Negative			Interrogative		
I	<i>am</i>	<i>playing</i>	I	<i>am not ('m not)</i>	<i>playing</i>	<i>am</i>	I	<i>playing</i>
we	<i>are</i>		we	<i>are not (aren't)</i>		<i>are</i>	we	
you			you				you	
they			they				they	
he	<i>is</i>		he	<i>is not (isn't)</i>		<i>is</i>	he	
she			she				she	
it			it				it	

**The Present Continuous (Progressive)** is used to denote:

1) **present actions (states):**

a) in progress happening **at** the present moment (coincide with the moment of speaking);

*The kettle **is boiling**. Can you turn it off, Mike?*

*Don't bother him. He **is still sleeping**.*

b) in progress happening **around** the present moment (temporary actions, do not coincide with the moment of speaking);

*David is **collecting** material for his new book now.*

*She is **taking** dancing classes currently.*

c) having a dynamic character (changing and developing situations);

*The climate is **getting** warmer.*

*His handwriting is **improving**.*

d) of unusual frequency (with the adverbials *always, constantly, again, etc.*) to give an emotional colouring to the sentence (criticism, irritation, impatience).

*Mr. Stone is always **grumbling**.*

*You are constantly **looking for** faults.*

2) **pre-arranged, planned, intended future actions:**

*I am **leaving** at the end of the week.*

*Are you **doing** anything tomorrow afternoon? – Yes, I am **playing** tennis with Ann.*

3) **background actions in storytelling.**

*There is this Scotsman, you see, and he's **walking** through the jungle when he meets gorilla. And the gorilla's **eating** a snake sandwich. So the Scotsman goes up to the gorilla and says...*

**Typical time expressions:** *now, at the moment, at present, all day (night, morning), the whole day (night, morning), still, these days, currently, at the time.*

**Exercise 1. Comment on the usage of the present tenses in the following sentences.**

1. Japanese cuisine doesn't use a lot of dairy products.
2. Two donkeys are standing at a roadside, one asks the other...
3. The Hastings take their Christmas holiday in Prague.
4. Forgotten Brother Appears.
5. Unless you don't want to make me really angry, stop asking such silly questions.
6. Why are you tasting the milk?
7. They are always shouting at each other after work!
8. The universe is expanding and has been ever since the beginning.
9. The coffee tastes bitter.
10. What are you doing tomorrow evening?
11. First, I preheat the oven to 180° and cut the vegetables.
12. Look – the lion is chasing the gazelle!
13. We are staying with my brother as our house is under reconstruction.
14. France kicks off, Zidane passes on Henry, Henry cuts inside...
15. Grandma spends all her evenings in front of the TV knitting.

## Exercise 2. Choose the correct variant.

1. The Guggenheim Museum in Bilbao *houses / is housing* Spain's largest collection of Modern Art.
2. We *try out / are trying out* a new paper supplier at the moment. The old one was too expensive.
3. The children *don't eat / aren't eating* sweets and chocolate before they *go / are going* to bed at night. It's bad for their teeth.
4. These animals *display / are displaying* a great deal of aggression if disturbed.
5. We *currently show / are currently showing* the film 'Star Wars' at all the cinemas of the city.
6. Quick! Get rid of all the mess! Here *come / are coming* Mum and Dad!
7. The weather forecast *says / is saying* there'll be wind from the north-west tonight. That *always brings / is always bringing* snow with it at this time of year.
8. You always *complain / are always complaining* and it really *gets / is really getting* on my nerves! Why can't you just accept things and relax?
9. The rubbish collectors *come / are coming* on Friday in this area. They *don't take / are not taking* rubbish not left in black plastic bags.
10. Some kinds of fish *contain / are containing* high levels of dangerous metals.
11. Loud music can be really annoying. Some people *don't realise / are not realising* what a nuisance it can be.
12. *Does the orchestra play / Is the orchestra playing* at the Town Hall this week? I'd really like to see their new concert.
13. What *do you consider / are you considering* to be the lowest price they'll sell the house for?
14. Swimming *provides / is providing* exercise for more muscle groups than any other physical activity.
15. What *do you think / are you thinking* of Katy's new hairstyle? It's unusual, isn't it?
16. Scientists nowadays *slowly begin to understand / are slowly beginning to understand* more about how the brain works.

## Exercise 3. Write the correct form of the verb in brackets to complete this dialogue.

SARAH: Welcome to the programm. This afternoon I (1) ... (stand) in the middle of the northern Black Forest, Germany, with Rainer, from Friends of the Forest.

RAINER: Good afternoon, Sarah.

SARAH: Rainer, you are very concerned about this area of the forest, aren't you? Can you tell us why?

RAINER: Yes. Much of the forest was wiped out in the hurricane last winter, as you can see. Many of the trees are dead, and more (2) ... (die) because of the irreversible damage. We at Friends of the Forest (3) ... (believe) that the authorities (4) ... (not/do) enough right now to restore this beautiful forest to its former state.

SARAH: But they (5) ... (clear) the dead trees away, aren't they? I (6) ... (see) some men working over there...

RAINER: Of course, but they (7) ... (do) this every year. It's the normal procedure. We (8) ... (need) more trees now, but they (9) ... (not/plant) any new trees to replace those that died.

SARAH: I see. But you have approached the authorities about this, I (10) ... (understand).

RAINER: We have tried, but each time they (11) ... (say) that they haven't got any money to restore the forest as quickly as we'd like. They (12) ... (always / use) money as the excuse. It (13) ... (get) really frustrating!

SARAH: But it's not just an excuse, is it? They clearly (14) ... (not / have) enough money for everything, and the hurricane was an unforeseen occurrence.

RAINER: Of course, we (15) ... (appreciate) that, and the point is that actually, we (16) ... (not / ask) for much money. We would just like their guidance – we can provide volunteers to work on the forest.

SARAH: Oh, I see. Well, that's somewhat different. Now Rainer, could you tell us...

#### **Exercise 4. Translate the sentences into English using the present tenses.**

1. Ты интересуешься футболом? – Да, но я редко хожу на стадион, предпочитаю смотреть футбол по телевизору.
2. Всегда она со всеми ссорится!
3. Куда ты идешь? – В библиотеку. – Ты часто работаешь в библиотеке? – Раз или два раза в неделю.
4. О чем ты думаешь, Изабелла? – Так, ни о чем.
5. Почему ты так часто опаздываешь? – Я не люблю рано вставать. – Думаю, что тебе все-таки стоит поставить будильник на 6.00.
6. Ник часто ездит в командировки, и я редко вижу его.
7. Ты не слушаешь, что я говорю. Что с тобой случилось?
8. Чем сейчас занимается Роберт? – Переводит статью. – А что он собирается делать потом? – Он хочет сходить в кино.
9. Моя жена сейчас не работает, она присматривает за ребенком. Она собирается на работу через 3 месяца.
10. Я не поеду отдыхать в следующем месяце в Испанию, так как у меня мало денег, а поездка стоит \$1000.
11. И я, и мой брат увлекаемся спортом. Зимой по выходным мы часто катаемся на лыжах, а летом любим рыбачить и кататься на лодке.
12. А где они сейчас? Ты с ними переписываешься? – Да, конечно.

13. Завтра утром Питер летит в командировку в Бостон.
14. Неужели он собирается не спать всю ночь, чтобы подготовиться к экзаменам?
15. Сейчас у меня каникулы, и я работаю в магазине.
16. Посмотри, вон едет наш автобус.
17. Да, меня зовут Блэк, но я не тот Блэк, которого Вы ищете. Он здесь больше не работает.
18. Ты собираешься смотреть телевизор сегодня вечером? – Да. – Я тоже.
19. Мой сын не любит хоккей. Он предпочитает футбол.
20. В этом году Питер работает усерднее, чем в прошлом. Поэтому его успеваемость постоянно улучшается.
21. Мой брат очень способный. Он хорошо учится в школе, прекрасно рисует и играет на пианино, увлекается спортом. Через неделю он едет в Москву, чтобы принять участие в соревнованиях по теннису.
22. Привет, Алекс, как дела? – Дела идут хорошо. Я сейчас занимаюсь на курсах венгерского языка.
23. Пожалуйста, включи телевизор. – Но я не знаю, как его включить.
24. Где Виктор? – Он все еще обедает. – Он обычно обедает в ресторане, не так ли? – Почему он не обедает дома? – Он живет далеко от работы.
25. Я опаздываю на научную конференцию в Лондоне. Ее открытие сегодня в два часа. Когда отправляется ближайший самолет на Лондон? – Ближайший рейс в 14.25, но Вы не волнуйтесь. Я советую Вам лететь в Вену рейсом, который отправляется в 9.10. В 10.45 из Вены есть самолет на Лондон, и через два с половиной часа Вы окажетесь на месте.

## THE PAST TENSES

### The Past Simple (Indefinite) Tense Forms

Affirmative		Negative			Interrogative		
I	<i>played</i>	I	<i>did not (didn't)</i>	<i>play</i>	<i>did</i>	I	<i>play</i>
you	<i>brought</i>	you		<i>bring</i>		you	<i>bring</i>
he		he				he	
she		she				she	
it		it				it	
we		we				we	
you		you				you	
they		they				they	

**The Past Simple (Indefinite) Tense** is used to denote:

- 1) a single past event, fact or state;

*Last night my neighbours **celebrated** their wedding anniversary.*

- 2) a succession of single past events, facts or states;

*He **got out of the bed**, **opened the window** and **lay down** again.*

3) repeated, habitual past actions or states.

*When I was a child I usually **went** to bed at nine.*

**Note! Used to do** is used for habitual past actions and states that are not true any more.

*I **used to play** tennis a lot but I don't play it very often now.*

*Janet **used to have** very long hair when she was a child.*

**Would do** is used for habitual past actions (not states!) that are not true any more.

*On Sundays, when he was a child, he **would get up** early and **go** fishing.*

**Typical time expressions:** *ago, last year, yesterday, the other day, in 1995, etc.*

### The Past Continuous Tense Forms

Affirmative			Negative			Interrogative		
I	<i>was</i>	<i>playing</i>	I	<i>was not (wasn't)</i>	<i>playing</i>	<i>was</i>	I	<i>playing</i>
he			he				he	
she			she				she	
it			it				it	
we	<i>were</i>		we	<i>were (weren't)</i>		<i>were</i>	we	
you			you				you	
they			they				they	

The **Past Continuous (Progressive) Tense** is used to denote:

1) actions in progress at a definite moment in the past or during a definite period of time in the past;

*She **was sitting** in the library from 2 till 4 yesterday.*

*John arrived when I **was cooking** supper.*

2) past actions of unusual frequency (with the adverbials *always, constantly, again, etc.*) to give an emotional colouring to the sentence (criticism, irritation, impatience);

*In those days he **was always borrowing** money and **forgetting** to pay it back.*

3) a polite request or suggestion in the expressions of the type 'I was wondering' in situations referring to the present.

*I **was wondering** if you'd like to come out with me one evening.*

**Typical time expressions:** *at 2 p.m., at that time yesterday, from 2 till 5, all evening, the whole day, between one and two, etc.*

**Exercise 1. Comment on the usage of the past tenses in the following sentences.**

1. She practised yoga on a weekly basis.
2. We moved a house a lot when I was a kid.
3. At the time, I was working for a large software company in California.
4. Did you study English at school?
5. At the time of our arrival the city was going through a period of rapid expansion.
6. She used to dislike Sylvia but now they are the BFFs.
7. Darkness was descending over the hushed city as James staggered back to college.
8. I was killing mosquitoes at 2 o'clock in the morning.
9. *Sony* and *Philips* invented the CD in the early 1980s.
10. For the first three months he was taking antibiotics on a daily basis.
11. My husband would start a day with a cup of black coffee and a fresh newspaper.
12. A man without a leg came to the door, took out his wrench, and started to force the lock.
13. Linda used to be super slim before she became a mom for the first time.
14. He stepped on his glasses as he was looking for them.

**Exercise 2. Choose the correct variant.**

1. When you were passing the town hall clock, *did you notice* / *were you noticing* what time it was?
2. Last night my neighbours *were shouting* / *would shout* for hours and I couldn't get to sleep.
3. When you lived in London, *did you use to travel* / *were you travelling* by bus?
4. Everyone *was having* / *had* a good time, although not many people *danced* / *were dancing*.
5. Jill was really hungry because she *tried* / *was trying* to keep a diet.
6. The Incas *didn't have* / *were not having* a written script.
7. Denise had to leave school early on Wednesday because she *took* / *was taking* her driving test.
8. *I was trying* / *tried* to get in touch with you all day yesterday. Where were you?
9. Jim *left* / *was leaving* on the early flight the next morning so he made his excuses and left the party before midnight.
10. Things has certainly changed – there *would be* / *used to be* loads of small shops when I was young.

**Exercise 3. Open the brackets and put the verb in the correct form – the Past Simple or the Past Continuous.**

1. Yesterday afternoon Sharon (go) to the station to meet Paul. When she (get) there, Paul (wait) for her.

2. When I got home, Bill (lie) on the sofa. The television was on but he (not/ watch) it. He (fall) asleep and (snore) loudly. I (turn) the television off and just then he (wake) up.
3. Last night I (just / go) to bed and (read) a book when suddenly I (hear) a noise. I (get) up to see what it was but I (not / see) anything, so I (go) back to bed.
4. Mary had to go to New York last week, but she almost (miss) the plane. She (stand) in the queue at the check-in desk when she suddenly (realize) that she (not/have) her passport on her. Fortunately, she doesn't live very far from the airport, so she (get) back to the airport just in time for her flight.
5. I (meet) George and Linda yesterday as I (walk) through the park. They (go) to a café for a drink and (invite) me to join them but I (meet) a friend and (not / have) time.
6. When I (phone) Helen last night she (wash) her hair.
7. Nobody (watch), so the little boy (take) the packet of sweets from the shelf and (put) it in his pocket.
8. At school I (dislike) the Maths teacher because he (always / pick) on me.
9. I (not / understand) what (go on). Several people (shout) at me, and one passer-by (wave) a newspaper in front of my face.
10. When the explosion (happen), hundreds of people (pass) through the airport.

**Exercise 4. Translate the sentences into English using the past tenses where it is necessary.**

1. Ты не можешь припомнить, что ты делал в то время?
2. Чем ты занимался в понедельник с 8 до 10 вечера? – Готовился к экзамену.
3. Я сняла пальто и пошла на кухню, где она жарила рыбу.
4. Я всегда раньше принимала эти таблетки от головной боли.
5. Вчера моя сестра уехала в Лондон. Она вернется через две недели.
6. Когда мы вышли из кино, все еще шел сильный снег.
7. Он сказал что-то, потом замолчал, затем снова заговорил.
8. Когда ты женился? – В 2010 году.
9. Уже смеркалось. Мы боялись, что они вообще не приедут.
10. Голоса их были слышны, но нельзя было разобрать, о чем они говорят.
11. В половине седьмого аэропорт все еще был открыт, но все его службы работали с огромным напряжением.
12. В прошлом году я имел обыкновение рано вставать.
13. С кем ты разговаривал, когда я тебя встретил? – Со своим двоюродным братом.
14. Ник был не очень надежным сотрудником: он всегда откладывал дела на самый последний момент.
15. Я прожил в Палермо всего два месяца, а потом переехал сюда.
16. Она что-то прилежно писала и даже не подняла головы, когда я вошел.
17. Я не был вчера в университете. – Я тоже.

18. Старушка постоянно говорила о своих болезнях, и пассажиры старались не вступать с ней в разговор.
19. Ты вчера был занят, не так ли? – Да, я писал статью. – Жаль. Вчера в университете была очень интересная лекция.
20. Он работал с утра до ночи, так как ему хотелось поскорее накопить нужную сумму и уехать отсюда навсегда.
21. Пока секретарь печатала документы, я разговаривал с главным инженером.
22. Ричард только сейчас безработный. Я помню, что в это время в прошлом году он работал на небольшой фабрике, она находится в 100 км от дома. Чтобы прокормить большую семью, Ричард тогда работал с утра до ночи, а очень часто и сверхурочно. Домой он приезжал только на выходные.
23. Все время, пока Джон рассказывал свою историю, она пристально смотрела на него. Она пыталась понять, что он за человек.
24. Ты вчера слушал последние известия? – Конечно, я всегда слушаю новости по вечерам.
25. Мне не понравился фильм. – Мне тоже.

## THE PERFECT TENSES

### The Present Perfect Tense Forms

Affirmative			Negative			Interrogative		
I	<i>have</i>	<i>played</i>	I	<i>have not (haven't)</i>	<i>played</i>	<i>have</i>	I	<i>played</i>
we		<i>brought</i>	we		<i>brought</i>		we	<i>brought</i>
you			you				you	
they			they				they	
he	<i>has</i>		he	<i>has not (hasn't)</i>		<i>has</i>	he	
she			she				she	
it			it				it	

**The Present Perfect Tense** is used to denote:

1) actions completed in the past but connected in their result with the present;  
*We **have** already **advertised** your post in the papers.*

2) incomplete actions that started in the past and are still happening in the present with emphasis on the result of the activity.  
*I **haven't** heard anything from him since he moved to Leeds.*

**Typical time expressions and prepositions of time:** *recently, lately, already, yet, still, today, this morning, this week, ever, never, always, all my life, how long, so far, since, ever since, for, over, etc.*

## The Present Perfect Continuous Tense Forms

Affirmative			Negative			Interrogative		
I	<i>have been</i>	<i>playing</i>	I	<i>have not been</i>	<i>playing</i>	<i>have</i>	I	<i>been playing</i>
we			we				we	
you			you				you	
they			they				they	
he	<i>has been</i>		he	<i>has not been</i>		<i>has</i>	he	
she			she				she	
it			it				it	

The **Present Perfect Continuous Tense** is used to denote:

- 1) an action that started at some time in the past, continued over a period of time and is still happening now (**inclusive Present Perfect Continuous**);

*I am learning English at High School. I **have been learning** English for 6 years.*

- 2) an action that started at some time in the past, continued over a period of time and has just stopped with visible present results (**exclusive Present Perfect Continuous**).

*Look! It **has been snowing**.*

*Sorry, I am late. **Have you been waiting** for me long?*

**Typical time expressions and prepositions of time:** *for, since, all my life, all morning, the whole morning, all night, over etc.*

## The Past Perfect Tense Forms

Affirmative			Negative			Interrogative		
I	<i>had</i>	<i>played brought</i>	I	<i>had not (hadn't)</i>	<i>played brought</i>	<i>had</i>	I	<i>played brought</i>
you			you				you	
he			he				he	
she			she				she	
it			it				it	
we			we				we	
you			you				you	
they			they				they	

The **Past Perfect Tense** is used to denote a **past action completed before another past action or before a moment in the past.**

The use of the Past Perfect is often prompted by:

- 1) an adverbial phrase with the preposition **by**;

*By the end of the year they **had finally got** their long-awaited pay rise.*

- 2) an adverbial clause of time with the conjunctions **before, after, as soon as, by the time, when, no sooner ... than, hardly ... when, scarcely ... when, barely ... when.**

The children **had cleaned** everything up by the time their parents returned.  
 The game **had hardly begun** when it started to rain.

**Note 1.** Sentences with **no sooner ... than, hardly ... when, scarcely ... when, barely ... when** may have an inverted word order.  
*Hardly had the game begun when it started to rain.*

**Note 2.** When there is a simple **succession** of past actions the **Past Simple Tense** is used for each event.  
*He got out of the bed, opened the window and lay down again.*

3) the construction **this (it, that) was the first (second, third, only, best, worst) time (case, etc.) smth had happened**;  
*It was the second time he had made a mistake in that job.*  
*Those were the first things she had bought since Christmas.*

4) the verbs **hope, intend, plan, expect, etc.** to describe past intentions which were unfulfilled.  
*I had intended to make a cake, but I ran out of time.*

### The Past Perfect Continuous Tense Forms

Affirmative			Negative			Interrogative		
I	<i>had been</i>	<i>playing</i>	I	<i>had not been</i>	<i>playing</i>	<i>had</i>	I	<i>been playing</i>
you			you				you	
he			he				he	
she			she				she	
it			it				it	
we			we				we	
you			you				you	
they			they				they	

**The Past Perfect Continuous Tense** is used to denote:

- 1) a past action of a certain duration completed before another past action;  
*How long had you been living in London before you moved to Leeds?*
- 2) a past action of a certain duration that were still in progress at a given later moment in the past.  
*When I first met Ann, she had been working for Exxon for 15 years.*

**Typical time expressions and prepositions:** *all day, for years, for 5 months, since 1999, when smb did smth..., how long, etc.*

**Exercise 1. Comment on the usage of the perfect tenses in the following sentences.**

1. I have spilt the paint.
2. We haven't decided yet what we are going to do.

3. Her nose looked differently – she had had plastic surgery.
4. Sergey has come by to say *Hi*.
5. I've been reading the book you lent me on genetics.
6. Kubrick had been trying to get the film made for more than twenty years.
7. Mike Tyson has bitten off Holyfield's ear.
8. I've learned that it takes years to build up trust, and only suspicion, not proof, to destroy it.
9. Hi, Fiona. What a mess! Have you been decorating?
10. Something has been killing the rabbits in the woods.
11. He'd drunk so much coffee, we couldn't lay him down.
12. Grace Kelly had been acting for three years before she made her first movie.
13. A group of us have been learning how to play bridge.
14. The house was a mess. They had been partying.
15. I have not failed. I've just found 10,000 ways that won't work.

**Exercise 2. Choose the correct variant.**

1. We still hold meetings in the old manor house, which *stood / has stood* on the same spot for over 200 years.
2. Beethoven *wrote / has written* some of the most accomplished symphonies you will ever listen to.
3. I *didn't see / haven't seen* Keith at all yesterday morning.
4. The nurses' strike *increased / has increased* the current waiting time for minor surgery from two to three weeks.
5. Only one British female astronaut *spent / has spent* time on a space station.
6. News is coming in of an accident in Parliament. A group of armed men *surrounded / has surrounded* the building and is holding hostages.
7. He's really much more handsome in the flesh than I *thought / have thought*.

**Exercise 3. Underline the correct phrase in each sentence.**

1. The price of petrol *has risen / has been rising* by 15 % over the past year.
2. No wonder you are overweight! *You have eaten / You have been eating* chocolates all day long!
3. *I've read / I've been reading* a really good book this morning.
4. Doesn't this room look better? *I've put / I've been putting* some posters up on the walls.
5. Don't disappoint me! *I've counted / I've been counting* on you.
6. Don't forget your pills today. *Have you taken them / Have you been taking them?*
7. Who *has worn / has been wearing* my scarf?
8. I think there's something wrong with your motorbike. *It's made / It's been making* some very funny noises.
9. Jack *has asked / has been asking* for a pay-rise three times this year.
10. *I've been phoning / I've phoned* Ann all evening, but there's no reply.

#### Exercise 4. Choose the correct variant.

1. So I *turned* / *had turned* on my heels and walked out of the shop in disgust.
2. When we got to the station the train *had just left* / *just left*, so we missed our connection.
3. The mechanics *had been taking* / *had taken* the engine apart several times before they were able to locate the source of the mysterious rattle.
4. By 1492 the Spanish *had expelled* / *had been expelling* the Moors from the mainland entirely.
5. She was surprised to find the fridge empty; the children *had eaten* / *had been eating* everything!
6. Our lead actor turned up and he was word perfect; apparently he *had practised* / *had been practicing* the lines all day.
7. The children wanted to go to the circus but their father *already booked* / *had already booked* tickets for the ice-skating spectacular.
8. Debbie couldn't understand why her computer crashed; *it had been working* / *it was working* perfectly for as long as she could remember.
9. My niece's riding accident was rather a setback because she *hoped* / *had hoped* to pursue a career as a ballet dancer.
10. Mrs Lawson arrived at casualty in quite a state; she *suffered* / *had been suffering* from severe stomach pains for hours.

#### Exercise 5. Translate the sentences into English using the perfect forms where it is necessary.

1. Ты понимаешь, что ты наделал? – Ничего особенного, все так поступают в подобных случаях.
2. За стеной кто-то смеялся. Смех был такой веселый и заразительный, она давно не слышала такого.
3. Где же ты был все это время? Мы искали тебя повсюду.
4. Мы работаем вместе уже пятнадцать лет и привыкли понимать друг друга.
5. Едва только она начала говорить об этом, как неожиданно заплакала.
6. В своем последнем письме моя подруга написала, что с сентября она занимается на курсах вождения. Я знала, что последних три года она мечтает научиться водить автомобиль.
7. К счастью, он не заметил ее красных глаз и не догадался, что она плакала.
8. Сэм надеялся, что его не сократят, и работал последних три месяца очень старательно.
9. Это самый лучший вратарь, который когда-либо играл в этой команде.
10. Том понимал, как тяжело бросить курить, потому что он сам курил уже 15 лет.
11. Сколько времени вы занимаетесь музыкой?

12. Вы давно играете на сцене, мисс. Простите, забыла Ваше имя.
13. Компания «Лего» 17 лет выпускала деревянные игрушки до того, как в 1950 году она перешла на выпуск кубиков из пластмасс.
14. Он уехал год тому назад и с тех пор не написал нам ни одного письма.
15. Извини, но я забыл купить подарок для Линды.
16. Вчера Ричард вернулся домой очень усталый, так как ему нужно было выполнить срочное задание, и он работал весь день без отдыха.
17. Сколько времени Вы живете в этом городе? – Мои родители переехали сюда, когда мне исполнилось 10. С тех пор мы здесь и живем.
18. Я посоветовал Ричарду обратиться в бюро переводов, чтобы получить работу, но он уже это сделал.
19. Сколько раз в этом году ты навещал своих родителей? Ты не был дома, наверное, с февраля.
20. Не успела она добежать до станции метро, как хлынул дождь.
21. Я Вам так благодарна за все, что Вы для меня сделали.
22. Она взглянула на часы. Было уже около пяти. Она прождала более получаса.
23. Не отъехали они и трех километров, как погода изменилась.
24. Марта выглядит очень усталой. И это не удивительно, ведь в последнее время она много работала, чтобы хорошо подготовить дипломный проект.
25. Прошло 5 лет, как я закончил университет.

## THE FUTURE TENSES

There are several ways of expressing the future in English:

- 1) **the Present Simple (Indefinite);**
- 2) **the Present Continuous;**
- 3) the construction **'to be going to + Infinitive'**;
- 4) **the Future Simple (Indefinite);**
- 5) **the Future Continuous;**
- 6) **the Future Perfect;**
- 7) **the Future Perfect Continuous.**

**The Present Simple** can be used:

- 1) with a time expression for a definite future arrangement to sound more formal about future plans;  
*I leave tonight.*
- 2) to speak about schedules or timetables or fixed events which do not depend on the speaker's plans or intentions.  
*The train leaves at 5.40 in the morning.*

**The Present Continuous** can be used:

- 1) to express a fixed plan or a personal arrangement, especially social and arrangements;

*Bob and Bill **are meeting** tonight.*

- 2) with verbs of movement (*go, come, arrive, fly, move* etc).

*I'm **going** home tonight.*

We use the construction '**to be going to + Infinitive**':

- 1) to talk about general plans, arrangements and intentions about the future;

*I'm **going to sell** my car.*

- 2) to denote predictions when there is evidence that something will happen in the near future.

*Look at the sky! It's **going to rain!***

### The Future Simple (Indefinite) Tense Forms

Affirmative			Negative			Interrogative		
I we	<i>shall ('ll) will ('ll)</i>	<i>play</i>	I we	<i>shall not (shan't) will not (won't)</i>	<i>play</i>	<i>shall</i>	I we	<i>play</i>
he she it you they	<i>will ('ll)</i>	<i>play</i>	he she it you they	<i>will not (won't)</i>	<i>play</i>	<i>will</i>	he she it you they	<i>play</i>

**The Future Simple** can be used:

- 1) new decisions made at the moment of speaking (on-the-spot decisions):

*I'm tired. I think I'll **go** to bed now.*

- 2) to make predictions based on opinion, considered inevitable or out of anybody's control;

*I'm sure he'll **come** back.*

- 3) to express offers, promises, requests, refusals;

***Will** you **have** a drink?*

- 4) future habitual action;

*Spring **will come** again. Birds **will build** nests.*

- 5) formal announcements of future plans and for weather forecasts, chiefly in newspapers and news broadcasts;

*The fog **will persist** in all the areas.*

- 6) in the main clauses of complex sentences with subordinate clauses of condition, time.

*If I drop this glass it **will break**.*

## The Future Continuous Tense Forms

Affirmative			Negative			Interrogative		
I we	<i>shall/will ('ll) be</i>	<i>playing</i>	I we	<i>shall not (shan't) be will not (won't) be</i>	<i>playing</i>	<i>shall</i>	I we	<i>be playing</i>
he she it you they	<i>will ('ll) be</i>	<i>playing</i>	he she it you they	<i>will not (won't) be</i>	<i>playing</i>	<i>will</i>	he she it you they	<i>be playing</i>

**The Future Continuous** can be used:

- 1) to express future without intention, an action that will occur in the normal course of events, it is less definite and more casual than the **Present Continuous**;  
*I'll be helping Tom tomorrow.*
- 2) to describe a future action which takes place at a certain moment in the future or which starts before the certain moment and probably continues after it.  
*This time tomorrow they **will be sitting** in the cinema.*

## The Future Perfect Tense Forms

Affirmative			Negative			Interrogative		
I we	<i>shall/will ('ll) have</i>	<i>played brought</i>	I we	<i>shall not (shan't) have will not (won't) have</i>	<i>played brought</i>	<i>shall</i>	I we	<i>have played have brought</i>
he she it you they	<i>will ('ll) have</i>	<i>played brought</i>	he she it you they	<i>will not (won't) have</i>	<i>played brought</i>	<i>will</i>	he she it you they	<i>have played have brought</i>

**The Future Perfect** can be used to denote:

- 1) actions which will be finished before a stated future time;  
*I save \$50 a month and I started in January. So by the end of the year I **will have saved** \$600.*
- 2) continuing situations up to a certain time.  
*This time next month, I'll **have worked** at the company for exactly 25 years.*

## The Future Perfect Continuous Tense Forms

Affirmative			Negative			Interrogative		
I we	<i>shall/will ('ll) have been</i>	<i>playing</i>	I we	<i>shall not (shan't) have been will not (won't) have been</i>	<i>playing</i>	<i>shall</i>	I we	<i>have been playing</i>
he she it you they	<i>will ('ll) have been</i>	<i>playing</i>	he she it you they	<i>will not (won't) have been</i>	<i>playing</i>	<i>will</i>	he she it you they	<i>have been playing</i>

**The Future Perfect Continuous** is used to emphasise the duration of an action up to a certain time in the future:

*By the end of the month we **will have been living** together for five years.*

### Exercise 1. Comment on the usage of the tenses in the following sentences.

1. I'm going to the theatre on Sunday.
2. I'll open the door myself, don't worry.
3. The bank *closes* at 3.00 tomorrow.
4. What *are you going to do* after lunch?
5. By 2007 we *will have built* our own house.
6. They've got all the best Hollywood actors! This movie *is going to be* very interesting!
7. *Shall* I help you with that tin opener?
8. Be quick, or you'll miss your train.
9. I'll be seeing Tom tonight.
10. In a year at that time I'll be sunbathing on the coast of the Red Sea.
11. His new secretary *is starting* on Monday.
12. Look! Andy *is going to fall* off his bike.
13. He'll have finished his book by Christmas.
14. It'll be sunny tomorrow.
15. The Euro *will fall* after Christmas.
16. By the end of the month he *will have visited* all the continents.
17. We *will meet* again but I don't know when.
18. *Are you leaving* for New York?
19. I *will have been teaching* English for 10 years by February.

### Exercise 2. Open the brackets using the correct form of the verb.

1. 'Have you looked at the new financial report yet?' – 'No, but I (stay) at home this evening so I can study it then.'

2. 'Have you parents decided whether you can come to the festival next weekend?' – 'Not yet, but they can't stop me. I (come) with you.'
3. 'You speak very good Chinese.' – 'Thank you. It's not surprising. I (live) in Beijing for eight years next month.'
4. A detailed break-down of the figures (appear) on our web site as soon as both companies (sign) the agreement.
5. At our next wedding anniversary we (be married) for twenty-five years.
6. By the time the banks (reach) an agreement on this issue, the amount of debt (be) out of control.
7. Erm, I don't want to be rude, but (you/stay) with us for long when you come over to Britain?
8. I (listen) to this nonsense!
9. I (wait) for you in the lobby of the hotel at 7 o'clock.
10. I'm going on holiday tomorrow. This time next Tuesday afternoon I (ski) down a mountain!
11. I've just been to the council meeting. It looks like they (build) a new shopping centre in town.
12. When your father (come), I'll tell him everything.
13. I've just heard a rumour that your favourite jazz singer (come) to give a concert in our village!
14. I've taken the 10.40 train to Bristol every Friday for three years and it's always half empty. Believe me, you (find) a seat.
15. I've won the jackpot on the lottery and I (spend) it all straight away!
16. Judging by all of the recent polls, the social democrats (win) next week's election by a huge majority.
17. Look at those black clouds. It (rain) this afternoon.
18. Meggy (finish) her project by next Friday.
19. Mr Fellows (play) golf tomorrow afternoon, as usual, so you can catch him on the golf course.
20. My father (be) furious when he (see) what you have done.
21. My father's approaching retirement age, so he (probably/sell) the business next year.
22. Our office (contact) you the moment we (have) any news.
23. The decorator (not/finish) the work until you (pay) him what you owe.
24. The plane (take off) at 10.45, so we had better check in by 8.45.
25. The sooner you (fall) behind, the more time you'll have to catch up.
26. Until the economic situation (improve), the company (not risk) any further investment in this field.
27. When we (reach) an agreement, we (ask) our legal department to draft a contract.
28. Work on the second stage of the project (begin) as soon as the first stage (prove) successful.
29. I (paint) the living room by the time Dad comes home. He (be) so surprised!
30. 'What did Jack say on the phone?' – 'He (have) a party on Saturday.'

### Exercise 3. Choose the correct variant.

1. 'Have you decided yet?' – 'Yes, *I'll have / I have* the roast beef, please.'
2. 'How *will I have known / will I know* that I have won the prize?' – 'You *will receive / are receiving* an email giving full details.'
3. Quick, get out of the car! *It will burst / It's going to burst* into flames at any minute.
4. Don't come round before midday, because *I'll clean / I'll be cleaning* the house until then.
5. *I am going to work out / will have worked out* for an hour and then we can leave.
6. Sorry, I can't come on Thursday evening. *I'm going to work / I'm working* late on an important project.
7. The cost of construction *is almost certainly rising / will almost certainly rise* before the end of the year as wage increases begin to take effect.
8. The conference *is going to begin / begins* next Friday morning at 9.00.
9. Here's the money you asked for. What *will you / are you going to* do with it?
10. She can't come to the phone right now. She *will be / is* about to leave for her Spanish lesson.
11. Brian, *will you lend / are you lending* your camera, please?
12. Why don't you give Helen this cheap perfume instead of the expensive one! She *won't have known / won't know* the difference!
13. I just want to remind everyone that *we'll be holding / we hold* a Latin-American evening at the town hall this Friday.
14. By the time the train *arrives / will arrive*, we will have been waiting here for more than half an hour.
15. They *will have employed / are going to employ* some extra staff next week.
16. *I will come / will have come* with you whenever you go on holidays.

### Exercise 4. Change each sentence so that it contains a future form and the given words.

1. Our plane's departure time is at 6.30 in the morning (leave).
2. My great-grandmother celebrates her 100<sup>th</sup> birthday next year (old).
3. It's my parents' 25<sup>th</sup> wedding anniversary next Saturday (married).
4. Come along next Monday afternoon – the band always records on Monday afternoons (will).
5. We are one hundred per cent certain of the success of our proposal (certainly).
6. The government expects another six thousand people to be in work by the end of the summer (found).
7. Do you have any idea of your arrival time on Friday? (arriving)
8. Our daughter has got a role in the school production of *Miss Saigon* next month (appearing).
9. The Tigers are likely to win the Cup Final (probably).
10. She started working here nearly two months ago (by the end of this week).

## Exercise 5. Translate into English.

1. Мы позвоним Энн, как только узнаем результаты теста.
2. Я испеку печенье к 10 часам. Я думаю, дети сразу же захотят его попробовать.
3. Мы будем обсуждать эту книгу завтра в пять.
4. Если мы не замаринуем мясо сейчас, оно испортится к вечеру.
5. Я собираюсь надеть свой любимый пиджак, когда пойду на собеседование.
6. Я заварю чай, когда вода закипит.
7. К 2030 году мы завершим строительство бассейна.
8. Экзамены начнутся в июне.
9. Здесь очень душно. – Я открою окно.
10. К субботе он переведет всю книгу.
11. Вы уже написали финальный тест? – Еще нет. Мы повторяем времена на следующей неделе.
12. В ноябре будет пять лет, как мы живем в этой квартире.
13. Через два дня я буду праздновать день рождения сестры.
14. Энн всегда увлекалась танцами. В сентябре будет 15 лет, как она танцует народные танцы.
15. Когда увидишь Джейн завтра, передай ей словарь, пожалуйста.
16. Здесь очень холодно. – Я включу обогреватель.
17. Я закрою дверь, когда буду уходить.
18. В следующем году исполнится 10 лет, как мы женаты.
19. Полагаю, он останется дома в такую ненастную погоду.
20. Не выключай компьютер. Я собираюсь поработать над переводом.

## THE SEQUENCE OF TENSES

In subordinate clauses, mainly subordinate object clauses, the tenses in English depend on the tense of the verb in the main clause. The rules applied are the rules of **the Sequence of Tenses** and are observed in **Indirect or Reported Speech** as well.

**Indirect Speech** can be introduced by a verb in a Present Tense. When the verb in the main clause is in a Present, Present Perfect or Future Tense we can report the **Direct Speech** without any change of tense:

*PAUL (phoning from the station): I'm trying to get a taxi.*

*ANN (to Mary, who is standing beside her): Paul says he is trying to get a taxi.*

**Indirect Speech** is usually introduced by a verb in the Past Tense. Verbs in **Direct Speech** have then to be changed into a corresponding Past Tense. The changes are shown in the following table.

<b>Direct Speech</b> or a <b>present</b> or a <b>future tense</b> in the main clause	<b>Indirect Speech</b> or a <b>past tense</b> in the main clause
<b>Present Simple</b> <i>'I never <b>eat</b> meat.'</i> he explained.	<b>Past Simple</b> <i>He explained that he never <b>ate</b> meat.</i>
<b>Present Continuous</b> <i>'I'm <b>waiting</b> for Ann.'</i> he said.	<b>Past Continuous</b> <i>He said (that) he <b>was waiting</b> for Ann.</i>
<b>Present Perfect</b> <i>'I <b>have found</b> a flat,'</i> he said.	<b>Past Perfect</b> <i>He said (that) he <b>had found</b> a flat.</i>
<b>Present Perfect Continuous</b> <i>He said, 'I've <b>been waiting</b> for ages.'</i>	<b>Past Perfect Continuous</b> <i>He said he <b>had been waiting</b> for ages.</i>
<b>Past Simple</b> <i>'I <b>took</b> it home with me,'</i> she said.	<b>Past Perfect</b> <i>She said she <b>had taken</b> it home with her.</i>
<b>Past Continuous</b> <i>He said, 'When I saw them they <b>were playing</b> tennis.'</i>	<b>Past Continuous/Past Perfect</b> <i>He said that when he saw them they <b>were playing/had been playing</b> tennis.</i>
<b>Past Perfect</b> <i>He said, 'I <b>had whitewashed</b> the ceiling by the time she phoned.'</i>	<b>Past Perfect</b> <i>He said that he <b>had whitewashed</b> the ceiling by the time she phoned.</i>
<b>Past Perfect Continuous</b> <i>He said, 'I <b>had been whitewashing</b> the ceiling for a couple of hours by the time she phoned.'</i>	<b>Past Perfect Continuous</b> <i>He said that he <b>had been whitewashing</b> the ceiling for a couple of hours by the time she phoned.</i>
<b>Future Simple</b> <i>He said, 'I <b>will/shall be</b> in Paris on Monday.'</i>	<b>Future Simple-in-the-Past</b> <i>He said he <b>would be</b> in Paris on Monday.</i>
<b>Future Continuous</b> <i>'I <b>will/shall be using</b> the car myself on the 24th,'</i> she said.	<b>Future Continuous-in-the-Past</b> <i>She said she'd <b>be using</b> the car herself on the 24th.</i>
<b>Future Perfect</b> <i>I am sure they <b>will have whitewashed</b> the ceiling by 5 o'clock.</i>	<b>Future Perfect-in-the-Past</b> <i>I was sure they <b>would have whitewashed</b> the ceiling by 5 o'clock.</i>
<b>Future Perfect Continuous</b> <i>I am sure they <b>will have been whitewashing</b> the ceiling for 3 hours by 5 o'clock.</i>	<b>Future Perfect Continuous-in-the-Past</b> <i>I was sure they <b>would have been whitewashing</b> the ceiling for 3 hours by 5 o'clock.</i>

Past Tenses sometimes remain unchanged. In theory the Past Simple Tense changes to the Past Perfect, but in spoken English it is often left unchanged, provided this can be done without causing confusion about the relative times of the actions.

*He said. 'I **loved** her'* must become *He said he **had loved** her* as otherwise there would be a change of meaning.

**But** *He said, 'Ann **arrived** on Monday'* could be reported *He said Ann **arrived/had arrived** on Monday.*

The **Past Continuous** Tense in theory changes to the **Past Perfect Continuous** but in practice usually remains unchanged except when it refers to a completed action:

*She said, 'We **were thinking** of selling the house but we have decided not to.'*

*She said that they **had been thinking** of selling the house but had decided not to.*

**But** *He said, 'When I saw them they **were playing** tennis.'* = *He said that when he saw them they **were playing** tennis.*

In written English Past Tenses usually do change to Past Perfect but there are the following exceptions when the rule of the sequence of tenses may not be observed:

- 1) in **time clauses** the **Past Simple/Past Continuous Tenses** do not normally change:

*He said, 'When we **were living/lived** in Paris...' = He said that when they **were living** in Paris...*

*I'm sure she has been writing **since** she **came** home. = I was sure she had been writing **since** she **came** home.*

The main verb of such sentences can either remain unchanged or become the **Past Perfect**:

*He said, 'When we **were living/lived** in Paris we often **saw** Paul' = He said that when they **were living/lived** in Paris they often **saw/had** often **seen** Paul.*

- 2) if the statement is still **up to date** when we report it;  
*She said, 'I decided not to buy the house because it **was** on a main road' = She said that she had decided not to buy the house because it **was** on a main road.*
- 3) in object clauses expressing **general truth**;  
*The students **knew** that the water **consists** of oxygen and hydrogen.*
- 4) in object clauses referring to a **regular occurrence** or **existing fact**;  
*He **asked** the guard what time the train usually **starts** (or **started**).*
- 5) in object clauses used in **political language**;  
*The speaker **was** certain that the peoples **want** peace.*
- 6) when the point of reference for the past tense in the main clause is the **moment of speaking** (absolute time);  
*I've just talked to Jane on the phone. She **said** there **was** an earthquake **here** yesterday.*
- 7) when the action in the subordinate clause precedes the action in the main clause but refers to a **definite past moment** (The **Past Simple** is used then).  
*I **knew** that he **was born** in 1965.  
She **said** she had left the house **before** the letter **came**.*

If there are several subordinate clauses, the rule of the sequence of tenses is observed **in all of them**.

If the verb in the main clause is in a **past tense**, we observe the following changes of **adverbials** and **demonstrative pronouns**:

Direct Speech	Indirect Speech
here	there
now	then / at that time / right away / at the moment
today	that day
tonight / this evening	that night / that evening
yesterday	the day before
the day before yesterday	two days before
ago	before
last week, night etc.	the night, week etc. before / the previous night, week, etc.
tomorrow	the following day / the next day
the day after tomorrow	in two days' time
next week, year etc.	the following / the next week, year etc.
this, these	that, those

*'I saw her **the day before yesterday**,' he said = He said he'd seen her **two days before**.*

But if the speech is made and reported on the same day these time changes are not necessary:

*At breakfast this morning he said. 'I'll be very busy **today**.'* = *At breakfast this morning he said that he would be very busy **today**.*

**Here** can become **there** but only when it is clear what place is meant:

*At the station he said, 'I'll be **here** again tomorrow.'* = *He said that he 'd be **there** again the next day.*

Usually **here** has to be replaced by some phrase:

*She said, 'You can sit **here**, Tom.'* = *She told Tom that he could sit **beside her** etc.*

**But** *He said, 'Come here, boys'* would normally be reported: *He called the boys.*

Indirect statements are normally introduced by **say**, or **tell + object**.

*He **said** he'd just heard the news.*

*He **told me** that he'd just heard the news.*

If the direct question begins with a question word (*when, where, who, how, why* etc.) the question word is repeated in the indirect question:

*He said, 'Why **didn't** you **put** on the brake?' = He asked (her) why **she hadn't put** on the brake.*

*She said, 'What **do** you **want**?' = She asked (them) what **they wanted**.*

If there is no question word, **if** or **whether** must be used:

*'Is anyone there?' he asked = He asked **if/whether** anyone was there.*

### **Exercise 1. Fill in *say* or *tell* using the correct terms.**

Richard (0)    told    Sarah that he was having a party on a Saturday night. He (1)    that it would start early but it would finish quite late. He (2)    her to bring her sister along as well. Sarah (3)    she was looking forward to going. Richard (4)    her he would probably call again on Friday to (5)    her the way to his house.

### **Exercise 2. Fill in the correct verbs in correct forms.**

*order, tell, ask, beg, offer*

1. 'Let's call Brian,' Susan told me. – Susan    me to call Brian.
2. 'Don't make any noise,' Mother said to us. – Mother    us not to make any noise.
3. 'Please, stay a little longer,' Kate told her sister. – Kate    her sister to stay a little longer.
4. 'Fire!' the General shouted to the soldiers. – The General    the soldiers to fire.
5. 'Please, please, forgive me!' she said to him. – She    him to forgive her.

### **Exercise 3. Change the pronouns.**

1. Tom said, 'I have lost my keys'.  
Tom said    had lost    keys.
2. Bob and Marie said, 'We are taking our dog for a walk'.  
Bob and Marie said    were taking    dog for a walk.
3. Andrew said, 'My sister is coming to visit me next week'.  
Andrew said    sister was coming to visit    the following week
4. Mr Jones said, 'I need to buy a present for my wife on her birthday.'  
Mr Jones said    needed to buy a present for    wife on    birthday.
5. Father said, 'I want you to wash my car for me.'  
Father said    wanted    to wash    car for   .

**Exercise 4. Turn from Direct Speech into Indirect changing tenses if necessary.**

- 0 'I can't find my bag,' she said.  
*She said (that) she couldn't find her bag.*  
'How old are you?' he asked me.  
*He asked me how old I was.*
1. 'I'll paint the house next week, mom,' he says.
  2. 'I've put the washing into the washing-machine,' Rose said.
  3. A giraffe is bigger than a mouse,' he said.
  4. 'When will you call me?' she asked George.
  5. 'Guys, we haven't seen Tom for two weeks,' she said.
  6. Jim asked, 'Did you go to work yesterday?'
  7. 'I haven't phoned my uncle since last month,' she says.
  8. She asked, 'Have you met Danny before?'
  9. 'Birds can fly,' the student said.
  10. 'Have you seen my blue jacket anywhere?' she asked.
  11. 'He is studying for an exam now,' she said.
  12. 'Leaves fall from the trees in autumn,' he said.
  13. 'What have you done today?' Mother asked.
  14. 'We visited the circus last week,' they said.
  15. 'She won't go to school tomorrow,' mom said.
  16. 'Will you be home next week?' Chris asked Ann.

**Exercise 5. Open the brackets using the correct form of the verb.**

1. He said he (already/speak) to the manager.
2. I asked her if Mrs. Smith (just/leave).
3. He wanted to know where I (to live) for the last few years.
4. We agreed that I (see) them a few days later.
5. She told us that she (read) the book before she (watched) the film.
6. He wants to know if the manager (come back) tomorrow.
7. I asked him whether Mrs. Smith (register) yet.
8. Your parents want to know if you (have) a good time at the moment.
9. They told me that the train (leave) at that very moment.
10. He wanted to know how much money I (have) in my bank account.
11. Mr. Smith wants to know why you suddenly (decide) to resign last week.
12. She replied that she (not know) the answer.
13. She asked when the plane (arrive) the night before and whether it (come) direct from Brussels.
14. He asked whether I (talk) to Dr Smith when I (be) in hospital.
15. He asked when we (buy) the computer.
16. She said she (slowly/walk) round the hospital ward when she (see) me.
17. He said that his new house (be) near the sea.

## Exercise 6. Translate the text into English observing the rule of the Sequence of Tenses.

1. Тед подтвердил, что выполнил перевод.
2. Мэри спросила у Джейн, пойдет ли она на встречу книголюбов.
3. Она попросила нас отправить результаты, как только мы завершим проверку тестов.
4. Томас сообщил нам, что не успел подготовить доклад и не будет выступать на конференции.
5. Он спросил меня, умею ли я плавать.
6. Джейн рассказала, что когда она увидела этот дом в первый раз, то сразу поняла, что будет жить в нем.
7. Я объяснил им, что пишу сочинение и останусь дома, пока не закончу работу.
8. Я узнал, что месяц назад они купили большой дом и собираются переехать в него на следующей неделе.
9. Мама спросила, есть ли дома кофе.
10. Джейн объяснила, что лучшая температура для заваривания зеленого чая – 90 градусов.
11. Он увидел, что в статье много опечаток и попросил меня их исправить.
12. Мы не знали, что Пол родился и вырос во Франции.
13. Синди выступила лучше всех и все были уверены, что она получит первый приз.
14. Он сказал, что они будут обращаться к нему, если возникнут какие-то проблемы с регистрацией участия в конференции.
15. Нам объяснили, что, если не ввести адрес своей электронной почты, тест не будет отправлен.
16. Он рассказал нам, что живет в этом доме с 1956 года.
17. Он спросил, выполнил ли я задание вовремя.
18. Мой друг пожаловался, что давно уже ждет меня.
19. Джейн спросила, который час.
20. Моя подруга спросила, будем ли мы приглашать соседей на вечеринку.
21. Он попросил меня, чтобы я никому не рассказывал о сюрпризе, который мы готовим для Джейн.
22. Мы решили, что, когда уберем в доме, пойдем на прогулку.

## THE PASSIVE VOICE

**Voice** is the form of the verb which serves to show whether the subject of the sentence is the doer of the action expressed by the predicate verb or whether the subject of the sentence is acted upon.

The passive form is built up by means of the auxiliary verb **to be** in the required form and **Participle II** of the notional verb.

Tense	Active Voice	Passive Voice
Present Simple	<i>He delivers letters.</i>	<i>Letters are delivered.</i>
Present Continuous	<i>He is delivering the letters.</i>	<i>The letters are being delivered.</i>
Present Perfect	<i>He has delivered the letters.</i>	<i>The letters have been delivered.</i>
Past Simple	<i>He delivered the letters.</i>	<i>The letters were delivered.</i>
Past Continuous	<i>He was delivering the letters.</i>	<i>The letters were being delivered.</i>
Past Perfect	<i>He had delivered the letters.</i>	<i>The letters had been delivered.</i>
Future Simple	<i>He will deliver the letters.</i>	<i>The letters will be delivered.</i>
Future Perfect	<i>He will have delivered the letters.</i>	<i>The letters will have been delivered.</i>

**Present Perfect Continuous, Past Perfect Continuous, Future Continuous and Future Perfect Continuous** are not used in the passive for reasons of style.

When we turn a sentence from the active into the passive

- a) the **object** of the active sentence becomes the **subject** of the passive sentence;
- b) the verb changes from the **active form** into the **passive form** (correct form of the verb **to be** + **Participle II** of the notional verb);
- c) the **subject** of the active sentence becomes the **agent** in the passive sentence. We introduce the agent with **by** + person or **with** + object / instrument.

active	subject	verb	object	passive	subject	verb	agent
	Kim	baked	a cake.		A cake	was baked	by Kim.

**The Passive Voice** is used:

- 1) when the **agent** is **obvious, unimportant** or **unknown**;  
*Jim's car was stolen last night.* (We don't know who stole Jim's car.)  
*Olive oil is produced in Mediterranean countries.* (The agent is unimportant.)  
*The bank robbers are being chased.* (It is obvious, that the police are chasing them.)
- 2) to put the **emphasis** on the **agent**;  
*Penicillin was discovered by Alexander Fleming.*
- 3) when the **action is more important** than the agent, as in **instructions, processes, events, notices and news items**;  
*All complaints will be taken seriously.*
- 4) to make **more polite statements**;  
*The vase was broken.* (more polite)  
*You broke the vase.* (less polite)
- 5) in **more formal texts** (e.g. academic writing, business reports) and certain text types (e.g. newspaper articles, radio / TV news).  
*No survivors have been found in the disaster.*

**Exercise 1. Comment on the usage of the passive voice in the following sentences.**

1. How often are the rooms cleaned?
2. All the tickets have been sold.
3. Who was the 'Mona Lisa' painted by?
4. Dr Johnson is being interviewed at the moment.
5. Two hundred letters were posted yesterday.
6. Dinner is served after 7.
7. The word 'office' is spelt with double 'f'.
8. The front door had been closed before we returned home.
9. The 'Green Mile' was written by Stephen King in 1996.
10. Cricket is played in England.

**Exercise 2. Open the brackets using the correct form of the verb.**

1. Paper money (make) from cotton and linen fibers.
2. The cat (not feed) yesterday.
3. McDonald's (know) everywhere.
4. The new sofa (not deliver) next Friday.
5. He (sting) by a bee when he was jogging.
6. This photo (make) by my friend.
7. Mail (deliver) at 8 a.m.
8. He (take care of), I'm sure.
9. The crystal vase (drop) by accident.
10. All the food (eat) by the time I got there.
11. A lot of musical works (create) by Mozart.
12. Australia (discover) by Captain Cook.
13. The citizens (inform) as soon as possible.
14. The letters (already/post) when I came in.
15. Ann (promote) to senior manager.
16. The pictures (paint) by my father while he was on holiday last summer.
17. The alarm clock (set) every evening.
18. The room (clean) when I arrived.
19. A decision (not take) until the next meeting.
20. He could feel he (look at) and it made him feel ill at ease.

**Exercise 3. Rewrite the sentences in the Passive.**

1. Someone is using the computer.
2. They posted all the letters yesterday.
3. Mrs Gates will look after the baby.
4. We check every car engine thoroughly.
5. They have cancelled the meeting.
6. They cancelled all flights because of fog.
7. They send two million books to Spain every year.

8. They opened the factory at nine o'clock.
9. They are mending your shoes at the moment.
10. Someone will drive your car to Rome on Tuesday.
11. They don't allow smoking in this restaurant.
12. I have told the children about the party.
13. We invited two hundred people to the wedding.
14. The police are questioning Mr and Mrs Johnson.
15. We had already discussed the problem when you came.
16. Who wrote this novel?
17. When we got to the stadium we found that they had cancelled the game.
18. They have built a new hospital near the airport.
19. I didn't realise that somebody was recording our conversation.
20. Ann will show me a new car.

#### **Exercise 4. Translate the text into English using the Passive Voice.**

1. Его еще никогда не принимали за носителя языка.
2. Вам объяснили, как включать стиральную машину?
3. В футбол играют во всем мире.
4. Что-нибудь делается, чтобы починить этот аккумулятор?
5. Эти рецепты пирогов с капустой обсудят завтра.
6. Она чувствовала, что от нее что-то скрыли.
7. Статья будет переведена ко вторнику.
8. Его рецепт ванильного мороженого перевели на китайский язык.
9. Студентам всегда сообщают результаты теста в течение трех дней.
10. Спортсменам часто задают личные вопросы во время интервью.
11. Пиццу доставят в течение пятнадцати минут.
12. Это блюдо подают горячим.
13. На прошлой неделе мне купили новый телефон.
14. Если прямо сейчас котлеты обвалить в панировке, они будут готовы не раньше, чем через сорок минут.
15. Текст был отправлен до того, как в него были внесены правки.
16. В этом доме уже пять лет никто не живет.
17. Детям велели навести порядок в детской.
18. Уверен, завтра об этом фильме будут говорить все мои друзья.
19. Его отсутствие осталось незамеченным.
20. К нему вечно придираются.

### **HOW TO COMMENT ON TENSES**

#### **Four steps:**

1. Define the Tense of the verb form (*the Present Simple, the Past Continuous, the Present Perfect Continuous, etc.*).
2. Define the Voice of the verb form (*active, passive*).

3. Define the meaning of the tense form (*a habitual action, a single past event, an action in progress at a definite moment in the past, a past action completed before another past action, etc.*).
4. Add some other peculiarities if necessary (*The subject does not act, it's acted upon*).

### EXAMPLES OF COMMENTS

1. *The kettle is **boiling**. Can you turn it off, Mike?*  
The verb *to boil* is used in its Present Continuous Active form to denote an action in progress happening at the present moment.
2. *The house **was built** 5 years ago.*  
The verb *to build* is used in its Past Simple Passive form to denote a single event of the past. The subject does not act, it's acted upon.
3. *The children **had cleaned** everything up by the time their parents returned.*  
The verb *to clean* is used in its Past Perfect Active form to denote a past action completed before another past action.
4. *Oh, I've left the door open. **I'll go** and shut it.*  
The verb *to go* is used in its Future Simple Active form to denote an action decided on spontaneously.

### ANSWER KEY

#### The Present Tenses

##### Exercise 2.

- |  |  |
|--|--|
| 1) houses                                    | 9) come, don't take                    |
| 2) are trying out                            | 10) contain                            |
| 3) don't eat, go                             | 11) don't realise                      |
| 4) display                                   | 12) is the orchestra playing           |
| 5) are currently showing                     | 13) do you consider                    |
| 6) come                                      | 14) provides                           |
| 7) says, always brings                       | 15) do you think                       |
| 8) are always complaining, is really getting | 16) are slowly beginning to understand |

##### Exercise 3.

- |                  |                                   |
|------------------|-----------------------------------|
| 1) am standing   | 9) are not planting               |
| 2) are dying     | 10) understand                    |
| 3) believe       | 11) say                           |
| 4) are not doing | 12) always use / are always using |
| 5) are clearing  | 13) is getting                    |
| 6) see           | 14) don't have                    |
| 7) do            | 15) appreciate                    |
| 8) need          | 16) are not asking                |

#### Exercise 4.

1. Are you interested in football? – Yes, but I rarely go to the stadium. I prefer watching football on TV.
2. She is always quarrelling with everybody!
3. Where are you going? – To the library. – Do you often work in the library? – Once or twice a week.
4. What are you thinking about, Isabella? – Nothing serious, forget it.
5. Why are you often late? – I don't like getting up early. I think, you should set your alarm clock at 6 a.m.
6. Nick often goes on a business trip and I rarely see him.
7. You aren't listening what I am speaking about. What has happened to you?
8. What is Robert doing now? – He is translating an / the article. – What is he going to do / is he doing then? He wants to go to the cinema.
9. My wife is not working now. She is looking after a child. She is going to go / is going to work in 3 months.
10. I am not going on holiday to Spain next month because I have little money left. But the trip costs \$1000.
11. Both I and my brother are keen on sports. We often go skiing at weekends in winter. But we like fishing and boating in summer.
12. And where are they now? Are you in communication with them. – Yes, of course.
13. Peter is flying on a business trip to Boston tomorrow morning.
14. Is he going to burn the midnight oil to get ready for the exams?
15. I am on holiday now and I am working in the shop.
16. Look! There goes our bus.
17. Yes, my name is Black, but I am not the Black you are looking for. He doesn't work here any more.
18. Are you going to watch TV tonight? – Yes, I am. – So am I.
19. My son doesn't like hockey. He prefers football
20. Peter is working harder this year than last year. He is making progress.
21. My brother is really bright. He studies well at school, draws very nicely and plays the piano, is keen on sports. He is going to Moscow in a week to take part in the tennis competition.
22. Hello, Alex, how are you? – I am fine. I am doing a course in Hungarian.
23. Turn on the TV-set, please. – But I don't know how to turn it on.
24. Where is Victor? – He is still having lunch. – He usually has lunch at the restaurant, doesn't he? – Why doesn't he have lunch at home. – He lives / is living far from work.
25. I am late for a scientific conference in London. It starts at 2 o'clock today. When is the next flight to London? – The next flight is at 14.25, but don't worry. I advise you to take the flight to Vienna that departs at 9.10. There is a plane from Vienna to London at 10.45. You will be there in two and a half hours.

#### The Past Tenses

#### Exercise 2.

- |                             |                      |
|-----------------------------|----------------------|
| 1) did you notice           | 7) took              |
| 2) were shouting            | 8) was trying        |
| 3) did you use to travel    | 9) were experiencing |
| 4) was having, were dancing | 10) was leaving      |
| 5) was trying               | 11) used to be       |
| 6) didn't have              |                      |

### Exercise 3.

- 1) went, got, was waiting
- 2) was lying, wasn't watching, fell, was snoring, turned, woke up
- 3) went, was reading, heard, got up, didn't see, went
- 4) missed, was standing, realized, didn't have, got
- 5) met, was walking, were going, invited, was meeting, didn't have
- 6) phoned, was washing
- 7) was watching, took, put
- 8) disliked, he was always picking on / picked on
- 9) didn't understand, was going on, were shouting, was waving
- 10) happened, were passing

### Exercise 4.

1. Can't you remember what you were doing at that time?
2. What were you doing from 8 p.m. to 10 p.m. on Monday? – I was getting ready for my exam.
3. I took off my coat and went to the kitchen where she was frying fish.
4. I used to take / would take these headache pills.
5. My sister went to London yesterday. She is returning in two weeks.
6. When we went out of the cinema, it was still snowing heavily.
7. He said something, then fell silent and started speaking again.
8. When did you get married? – In 2020.
9. It was getting dark. We were afraid that they were not arriving at all.
10. The voices were being heard but was impossible to make out what they were talking about.
11. At half past six the airport was still closed, but all its services were working intensely.
12. I used to / would get up early last year.
13. Who were you talking to, when I met you? – To my cousin.
14. Nick wasn't a very reliable employee, he used to put off all the tasks till the last moment.
15. I had been living / had lived in Palermo for about two months and then moved here.
16. She was writing something diligently and didn't even raise / lift up her head when I entered.
17. I wasn't at university yesterday. – Neither was I.
18. The old lady was talking about her illnesses all the time, and the passengers tried / were trying not to enter into conversation.
19. You were busy yesterday, weren't you? – Yes, I was writing an article. It's a pity. There was a very interesting lecture at the /- university yesterday.
20. He was working from morning till night as he wanted to save up a good amount of money and leave this place forever.
21. While the secretary was typing / printing the documents, I was talking to the engineer-in-chief.
22. Richard is unemployed just now. I remember that this time last year he was working in a small factory. He was working / used to work / would work from morning till night, often overtime. He was going / used to go / would go home only at weekends.
23. While John was telling his story, she was staring at him all the time. She was trying to understand what kind of person he was.
24. Did you listen to the last news yesterday? – Of course, I always listen to the news in the evening.
25. I didn't like the film. – Neither did I.

## The Perfect Tenses

### Exercise 2.

- |                  |                   |
|------------------|-------------------|
| 1) has stood     | 5) has spent      |
| 2) wrote         | 6) has surrounded |
| 3) didn't see    | 7) thought        |
| 4) has increased |                   |

### Exercise 3.

- |                         |                        |
|-------------------------|------------------------|
| 1) has risen            | 6) have you taken them |
| 2) you have been eating | 7) has been wearing    |
| 3) I've been reading    | 8) it's been making    |
| 4) I've put             | 9) has asked           |
| 5) I've been counting   | 10) I've been phoning  |

### Exercise 4.

- |                                |                        |
|--------------------------------|------------------------|
| 1) turned                      | 6) had been practicing |
| 2) had just left               | 7) had already booked  |
| 3) had been taking             | 8) it had been working |
| 4) had expelled                | 9) had hoped           |
| 5) had eaten / had been eating | 10) had been suffering |

### Exercise 5.

1. Do you understand what you have done? – Nothing special, everybody acts / behaves in this way in such situations.
2. Somebody was laughing behind the wall. The laughter was so cheerful and contagious that she had never heard before.
3. Where have you been all this time? We have been looking for you everywhere.
4. We have been working together and are used to understanding each other.
5. She had hardly (scarcely, barely) started speaking about it when she burst out crying. / Hardly (scarcely, barely) had she started speaking about it when she burst out crying. / She had no sooner started speaking about it than she burst out crying. / No sooner had she started speaking about it than she burst out crying.
6. In her last letter my friend wrote that she had been doing a driving course since September. I knew that she had been dreaming of driving a car for the last three years.
7. Fortunately, he didn't notice her red eyes and didn't guess that she had been crying / had cried.
8. Sam hoped / had hoped that he wouldn't be made redundant and had been working very hard for the last three months.
9. He is the best goalkeeper who has ever played in this team. / He was the best goalkeeper who had ever played in this team.
10. Tom understood how it was difficult to give up smoking because he had already been smoking for 15 years.
11. How long have you been studying music?
12. Have you been playing on stage for long, Miss.? I am sorry, I forgot / have forgotten your name.
13. The Lego Group had been producing wooden toys for 17 years before it started to produce plastic cubes in 1950.

14. He left a year ago and hasn't written us a single letter since then.
15. I am sorry, but I have forgotten to buy a present for Linda.
16. Yesterday Richard came back home very tired as he had to do an urgent task and he had been working all day long without taking a rest.
17. How long have you been living in this city? – My parents moved here when I turned 10. We have been living here since then.
18. I advised Richard to apply to the translation agency to get a job, but he had already done it.
19. How many times have you visited your parents? You haven't been at home since February.
20. She had hardly (scarcely, barely) run to the metro station when it started raining heavily. / Hardly (scarcely, barely) had she run to the metro station when it started raining heavily. / She had no sooner (scarcely, barely) run to the metro station than it started raining heavily. / No sooner had she run to the metro station than it started raining heavily.
21. I am so grateful to you for everything you have done for me.
22. She looked at her watch. It was about five o'clock. She had been waiting for over half an hour.
23. They had hardly (scarcely, barely) covered 3 kilometers when the weather changed. / Hardly (scarcely, barely) had they covered 3 kilometers when the weather changed. / They had no sooner (scarcely, barely) covered 3 kilometers than the weather changed. / No sooner had they covered 3 kilometers than the weather changed.
24. Martha looks very tired. And it is not surprising as she has been working a lot to prepare a good graduation project.
25. Five years has passed since I graduated from university.

### The Future Tenses

#### Exercise 2.

- |  |                                  |
|--|----------------------------------|
| 1) am staying                              | 16) are going to win             |
| 2) am coming                               | 17) is going to rain             |
| 3) will have been living / will have lived | 18) will have finished           |
| 4) will appear, sign                       | 19) will be playing              |
| 5) will have been married                  | 20) will be, sees                |
| 6) reach, will be                          | 21) will probably sell           |
| 7) are you going to stay                   | 22) will contact, have           |
| 8) won't listen                            | 23) won't finish, pay            |
| 9) will be waiting                         | 24) takes off                    |
| 10) will be skiing                         | 25) fall                         |
| 11) are going to build                     | 26) improves, will not risk      |
| 12) comes                                  | 27) reach, will ask              |
| 13) is coming                              | 28) will begin, proves           |
| 14) won't find                             | 29) will have painted, will be   |
| 15) will spend                             | 30) is having / is going to have |

#### Exercise 3.

- |                               |                         |
|-------------------------------|-------------------------|
| 1) I'll have                  | 9) are you going        |
| 2) will I know, will receive  | 10) is                  |
| 3) It will burst              | 11) will you lend       |
| 4) I'll be cleaning           | 12) won't know          |
| 5) am going to work out       | 13) we hold             |
| 6) I'm working                | 14) arrives             |
| 7) will almost certainly rise | 15) are going to employ |
| 8) begins                     | 16) will come           |

#### Exercise 4.

1. Our plane leaves at 6.30 in the morning.
2. My great-grandmother will be 100 years old next year.
3. My parents will have been married for 25 years next Saturday.
4. The band will be recording next Monday afternoon.
5. They will certainly accept our proposal.
6. The government expects that another six thousand people will have found work by the end of the summer.
7. Do you have any idea when you are arriving on Friday?
8. Our daughter is appearing in the school production of *Romeo and Juliet* next month.
9. The Tigers will probably win the Cup Final.
10. She will have been working here for two months by the end of this week.

#### Exercise 5.

1. We'll call Ann as soon as we know the results of the test.
2. I'll have baked the biscuits by 10. I think the children will want to taste them right away.
3. We will be discussing the book at 5 p.m. tomorrow.
4. Unless we marinate the meat right away, it will go bad by the evening.
5. I'm going to put on my favourite jacket when I go to the interview.
6. I'll brew tea when the water boils.
7. We will have built the swimming pool by 2030.
8. The exams start in June.
9. It's very stuffy in here. – I'll open the window.
10. He will have translated the entire book by Saturday.
11. Have you already written your final test? – Not yet. We revise/are revising all the tenses next week.
12. We will have been living in this flat for 5 years by November.
13. I'll be celebrating my sister's birthday in two days.
14. Ann has always been keen on dancing. She will have been dancing folk dances for 15 years by September.
15. Please, give this dictionary to Ann, when you see her.
16. It's cold in here. – I'll switch on the heater.
17. I'll close the door when I leave.
18. We will have been married for ten years by next year.
19. I suppose he'll stay at home in such nasty weather.
20. Don't turn off the computer, please. I'm going to work on the translation.

### The Sequence of Tenses

#### Exercise 1.

- |         |         |
|---------|---------|
| 1) said | 4) told |
| 2) told | 5) tell |
| 3) said |         |

#### Exercise 2.

- |            |            |
|------------|------------|
| 1) offered | 4) ordered |
| 2) told    | 5) begged  |
| 3) asked   |            |

### Exercise 3.

1. Tom said he had lost his keys.
2. Bob and Marie said they were taking their dog for a walk.
3. Andrew said his sister was coming to visit him the following week
4. Mr. Jones said he needed to buy a present for his wife on her birthday.
5. Father said he wanted us to wash his car for him.

### Exercise 4.

1. He tells his mum that he will paint the house next week.
2. Rose said that she had put the washing into the washing-machine.
3. He said (that) a giraffe is bigger than a mouse.
4. She asked George when he would call her.
5. She said (that) they hadn't seen Tom for two weeks.
6. Jim asked if I went to work the previous day.
7. She says that she hasn't phoned her uncle since last month.
8. She asked if I had met Danny before.
9. The student said that birds can fly.
10. She asked if I had seen her blue jacket anywhere.
11. She said that he was studying for an exam then.
12. He said that leaves fall from the trees in autumn.
13. Mother asked what I had done that day.
14. They said that they had visited / visited the circus the previous week.
15. Mom said that she wouldn't go to school the next day.
16. Chris asked Ann whether she would be home the following week.

### Exercise 5.

- |   |   |
|---|---|
| 1) had already spoken                   | 10) had   |
| 2) had just left                        | 11) decided   |
| 3) had been living                      | 12) Didn't know                                     |
| 4) would see                            | 13) had arrived, had come                           |
| 5) had read, watched                    | 14) had talked, was                                 |
| 6) will be coming back / is coming back | 15) bought/were going to buy                        |
| 7) had registered                       | 16) was slowly walking/had been slowly walking, saw |
| 8) are having                           | 17) is  |
| 9) was leaving                          |   |

### Exercise 6.

1. Ted confirmed that he had done the translation.
2. Mary asked Jane if she would go to the book lovers meeting.
3. They asked us to send the results as soon as we finished checking the tests.
4. Tomas informed us that he hadn't managed to make the report and wouldn't participate in the conference.
5. He asked me whether I (can) could swim.
6. Jane said that when she saw the house for the first time, she immediately understood that she would live (would be living / was going to live) in it.
7. I explained to him that I was writing a composition and that I would stay at home till I finished my work.
8. I knew that they had bought a large house a month before and were going to move into it the next week.

9. Mother asked if there was coffee at home.
10. Jane explained that the best temperature for brewing green tea is 90 C.
11. He saw that there were many misprints in the article and asked me to correct them.
12. We knew that Paul had been born (was born) and had grown up (grew up) in France.
13. Cindy's performance was the best and everybody was sure that she would get the first prize.
14. He said that they would turn to him if they had any problems with the registration for the conference.
15. We were explained that if the e-mail address was not entered, the test wouldn't be sent.
16. He told us that he had been living in that house since 1956.
17. He asked me whether I had done the task on time.
18. My friend complained that he had been waiting for me for a long time.
19. Jane asked what the time was.
20. My friend asked if/whether we would invite (were going to invite) our neighbours to the party.
21. He asked me not to tell anyone about the surprise we were preparing for Jane.
22. We decided that when we finished cleaning the house we would go for a walk.

### **The Passive Voice**

#### **Exercise 2.**

- |                                   |                             |
|-----------------------------------|-----------------------------|
| 1) is made                        | 11) were created            |
| 2) wasn't fed                     | 12) was discovered          |
| 3) is known                       | 13) will be informed        |
| 4) will not be delivered          | 14) had already been posted |
| 5) was stung                      | 15) has been promoted       |
| 6) was made / has been made       | 16) were painted            |
| 7) is delivered                   | 17) is set                  |
| 8) will be taken care of          | 18) was being cleaned       |
| 9) was dropped / has been dropped | 19) will not be taken       |
| 10) had been eaten                | 20) was being looked at     |

#### **Exercise 3.**

1. The computer is being used.
2. All the letters were posted yesterday.
3. The baby will be looked after by Mrs Gates.
4. Every car engine is thoroughly checked.
5. The meeting has been cancelled.
6. All flights were cancelled because of fog.
7. Two million books are sent to Spain every year.
8. The factory was opened at nine o'clock.
9. Your shoes are being mended at the moment.
10. Your car will be driven to Rome on Tuesday.
11. Smoking is not allowed in this restaurant.
12. The children have been told the about the party.
13. Two hundred people were invited to the wedding.
14. Mr and Mrs Johnson are being questioned by the police.
15. The problem had already been discussed when you came.
16. Who was this novel written by?

17. When we got to the stadium we found that the game had been cancelled.
18. A new hospital has been built near the airport.
19. I didn't realise that our conversation was being recorded.
20. I will be shown a new car by Ann. / A new car will be shown to me by Ann.

#### **Exercise 4.**

1. He has never been mistaken for a native speaker.
2. Have you been explained how to turn on the washing machine?
3. Football is played all around the world.
4. Is anything being done to repair the accumulator?
5. These cabbage pie recipes will be discussed tomorrow.
6. She felt that something had been hidden from her.
7. The article will have been translated by Tuesday.
8. His vanilla ice-cream recipe has been translated into Chinese.
9. Students are always informed of the results of the test within 3 days.
10. Sportsmen are often asked personal questions during an interview.
11. Pizza will be delivered within 15 minutes.
12. This dish is served hot.
13. I was bought a new phone last week.
14. In case the cutlets are being coated with breadcrumbs now, they will be ready no sooner than in 40 min.
15. The text had been sent before it was edited.
16. This house has been lived in for 5 years already.
17. The children were told to clean up their room.
18. I am sure that this film will be discussed by all my friends tomorrow.
19. His absence was unnoticed / went unnoticed.
20. He is constantly being picked on.

## THE OBLIQUE MOODS

**Mood** is the form of the verb, which shows in what relation to reality the speaker places the action expressed by the predicate verb. There are 3 moods in English:

**The Indicative Mood** presents actions as **real facts** in the present, past or future. Indicative mood forms distinguish the categories of tense (present, past, future), aspect (common, continuous), correlation (non-perfect, perfect), voice (active, passive), number and person.

**The Imperative Mood** expresses a **command** or a request to perform an action addressed to somebody, but not the action itself. The affirmative Imperative Mood form coincides with the stem of the verb (e.g. *Do! Begin!*), for the negative we put **do not (don't)** before the verb (e.g. *Don't hurry!*), the auxiliary **do** is placed before the affirmative imperative to sound persuasive or express irritation (e.g. *Do hurry. Do be quiet.*).

**The Oblique Moods** express **unreal** or **problematic** actions.

**Subjunctive II** and the **Conditional Mood** express **unreal (contrary to reality, hypothetical)** actions. The difference between the two moods is in their form and in their usage.

**Subjunctive II** has two basic forms: the **non-perfect** form is synthetic and homonymous with **the Past Simple**: *did, went, wrote, were* (for all persons). **Was** is also possible with **I/he/she/it** and is more common in **conversational** English.

The **perfect** form of **Subjunctive II** is homonymous with **the Past Perfect**; there are **continuous** and **passive** forms as well.

**The Conditional Mood** is an analytical form built up with the help of the auxiliary verb **should** (for the 1<sup>st</sup> person) or **would** (for all persons) plus the **infinitive**. The **non-perfect** Conditional Mood employs the **non-perfect infinitive**: *would do, would be doing, would be done*; the **perfect** Conditional Mood is formed with the help of the **perfect infinitive**: *would have done, would have been doing, would have been done*.

Although the auxiliary **would** and **should** are both possible for the first person in **the Conditional Mood**, **would** for the first person is more common in modern English, **should** is rare in American English:

*If I knew her name, I would tell you. Если бы я знал ее имя, я бы тебе сказал.*

**Subjunctive I** and the **Suppositional Mood** express **problematic** (viewed as **desired, necessary, possible, supposed, imaginary**) actions.

**Subjunctive I** is a synthetic form surviving from Old English, homonymous with the plain verb stem: *be, go, write* etc.

**The Suppositional Mood** is an analytical form built up with the help of the auxiliary verb **should** for all persons plus the **infinitive**.

Expressing the same kind of modality, **Subjunctive I** and **the Suppositional Mood** are used in the same syntactic structures and are, to a great extent, interchangeable.

However, they differ **stylistically**: thus, in **British** English **Subjunctive I** is only preserved in elevated prose, poetry or official documents (used in **formal** English). In **neutral**, everyday speech the British use **the Suppositional Mood** or the Present Simple.

In **American** English **Subjunctive I** in **neutral** and **colloquial** speech is the norm:

**British**

*Tom's parents have suggested that he **should get** a job/that he **gets** a job.*

*It's important that everything **should go**/everything **goes** according to plan.*

**American**

*Tom's parents have suggested that he **get** a job.*

*It's important that everything **go** according to plan.*

All the **forms** of the mentioned above **Oblique Moods** can be presented in the following table:

Mood Form		Unreal actions		Problematic actions	
		Subjunctive II	the Conditional Mood	the Suppositional Mood	Subjunctive I
Non-perfect	Common	did were	would / should (I, we) do	should do	do / be done
	Continuous	were doing	would / should (I, we) be doing	should be doing	
	Passive	were done	would / should (I, we) be done	should be done	
Perfect	Common	had done	would / should (I, we) have done	should have done	
	Continuous	had been doing	would / should (I, we) have been doing	should have been doing	
	Passive	had been done	would / should (I, we) have been done	should have been done	

### TEMPORAL RELATIONS WITHIN THE OBLIQUE MOODS

Oblique mood forms (Subjunctive II, Conditional and Suppositional) distinguish the **categories of time correlation (non-perfect/perfect)**, **aspect (common/continuous)** and **voice (active/passive)**, but they have **no tense category**.

Otherwise stated, they cannot refer the action directly to the present, past or future. They can only indicate if the action of the verb in the Oblique Mood **coincides** in time with the action of the indicative mood form in the main clause or **precedes** it.

This relative expression of time-reference is based on **the category of time correlation**, that is, a **non-perfect** form of Subjunctive II, the Conditional or the Suppositional Mood in the subordinate clause denotes an action **simultaneous** with the action expressed by the indicative mood form in the main clause.

In a **simple sentence a non-perfect** form denotes an action **simultaneous** with or **posterior to the moment of speaking** (or, we may say, refers the action to the **present or future**).

*I would like to be at the sea. Я бы хотел быть сейчас у моря.*

*I wish I were at the sea. Жаль, что я не у моря.*

*I was wishing I were at the sea. Мне было жаль, что я не у моря.*

**Perfect** forms of Subjunctive II, the Conditional and the Suppositional Mood indicate **priority to** the action expressed by the indicative mood form in the main clause.

In **simple sentences a perfect** form denotes an action **prior to the moment of speaking** (or, we may say, refers to **the past**).

*If only I had noticed it then. Если бы только я заметил это тогда.*

*I wish I hadn't got into this mess. Жаль, что я попал в эту запутанную ситуацию.*

## THE OBLIQUE MOODS IN SIMPLE SENTENCES

In simple sentences **Subjunctive I** is used:

1) in a few set expressions as a survival of old usage (the so-called **formulaic expressions**) expressing **wish**:

*Long live the Army/heroes, etc.! – Да здравствует армия/герои!*

*Glory be! – Черт (возьми)!*

*Success attend you! – Удачи! С Богом!*

*Be yours a happy meeting! – Пусть Ваша встреча будет успешной!*

*Far be it from me to think of that. – У меня такого и в мыслях не было.*

*(God) bless you! – Будь здоров! Благослови тебя Господь! Боже мой!*

*Curse this fog! – Будь проклят этот туман!*

*God save the Queen! – Боже, храни королеву!*

*Suffice it to say that he is a liar. – Достаточно сказать, что он лжец.*

*Heaven forbid! – Боже упаси!*

*The devil take him! – Черт бы его побрал!*

*Manners be hanged! – К черту манеры!*

*Confound your ideas! – К черту твои идеи!*

*Confound it!* – К черту!  
*God damn it!* – Будь оно проклято!  
*God rest his soul!* – Да упокоится душа его с миром!  
*Heaven help us!* – Да поможет нам Бог!  
*God forbid!* – Боже упаси!  
*Far be it from me...* – У меня и в мыслях не было...

Notice also the phrase **if need be**, which means ‘if it is necessary’ and **(if) truth be told**, which means ‘to be frank’:

*If need be we can always bring another car. Если нужно, мы всегда можем взять еще одну машину.*

*But the fictional words he created were often bleak, and so is our current life together, truth be told. Но вымышленные миры, которые он создавал, часто были безрадостны, как и наша жизнь сейчас, по правде говоря.*

**Subjunctive I** in **formulaic** expressions of **wish** can be replaced by **may + infinitive**:

*May success attend you!* Удачи!  
*May your meeting be happy!* Пусть Ваша встреча будет успешной!  
*May the Army live long!* Да здравствует армия!

<b>STUDY</b>	<p><b>Subjunctive I</b> is also sometimes used <b>in poetry</b> to express <b>wish</b>:</p> <p><i>STEVENSON: Fair the day shine as it shone in my childhood.</i> (= May the day shine / I hope it will shine.)</p>
--------------	--

2) in **formulaic expressions** having a **concessive** meaning:

*Happen (come) what may (will).* Что бы ни случилось.  
*Cost what it may.* Чего бы это ни стоило.  
*So be it / Be it so.* Пусть будет так.  
*Be that as it may.* Как бы то ни было / Будь что будет.  
*Be it rain or snow / Come rain or shine.* Каковы бы ни были обстоятельства.

**Subjunctive I** in these expressions may be replaced by **let + infinitive**:

*Let it be so.* Пусть будет так.

3) simple sentences with an **indefinite pronoun** as the **subject** expressing a **command** or a **request** (it is the only productive pattern of a simple sentence with Subjunctive I):

*Everybody leave the room.* Всем **выйти** из комнаты.  
*Somebody switch off the light!* Пусть кто-нибудь **выключит** свет!

**Subjunctive I** may be replaced in such sentences by **let + infinitive**:

*Let everybody leave the room.* Всем **выйти** из комнаты.

**The Suppositional Mood** is used only in one type of interrogative sentences:

1) simple interrogative sentences beginning with **And what if...?:**

*And what if he should come back? А что если он вдруг вернется?*

**Subjunctive II** is used:

1) in exclamatory sentences beginning with **oh, that / if only** expressing **wish** or **regret**. Sentences beginning with **oh, that** are characteristic of literary style. **If only** means the same as **I wish**, but it is more emphatic.

**Oh, that** and **if only** are followed by a **non-perfect Subjunctive II** form to express a **wish/regret** about a present or future situation (simultaneous with or posterior to the moment of speaking):

*If only I knew more people! Если бы только я знал больше людей!*

*If only it were not raining! Если бы только не шел дождь!*

*Oh, that it were snowing now! Ах, если бы сейчас шел снег!*

A **regret** about something that happened or did not happen in the past (prior to the moment of speaking) is expressed by **oh, that / if only** followed by a **perfect Subjunctive II** form:

*If only she had phoned me yesterday! Если бы только она позвонила мне вчера!*

*If only I hadn't agreed to help them! Ах, если бы я не согласился помочь им!*

*If only I hadn't parked there! Если бы я там не припарковался! / Жаль, что я там припарковался.*

The modal verb **could** in its **Subjunctive II** form is also possible in the sentence pattern with **if only** with any form of the **infinitive**:

*If only I could play the piano like that! Ах, если бы я могла так играть на пианино!*

*If only I could have helped you yesterday! Ах, если бы могла помочь тебе вчера!*

The modal verb **would** in its **Subjunctive II** form is used in the sentence pattern with **if only** to express **polite request** or **annoyance**. The **non-perfect infinitive** refers the action to the **present** or **future** (shows that the action is simultaneous with or posterior to the moment of speaking):

*If only you would tell me the truth! Если бы ты только не лгал мне!*

2) simple sentences with **modal verbs**. In the sentences referring to the **present** or **future** (simultaneous with or posterior to the moment of speaking) the modal verb in Subjunctive II is followed by a **non-perfect infinitive**, in the sentences referring to the **past** (prior to the moment of speaking) – by a **perfect** one:

*Could you come again tomorrow? Ты не мог бы завтра снова зайти?*

*You might have opened the door for me. Мог бы и открыть мне дверь.*

3) simple sentences with modal phraseological expressions **had better / had best** expressing **advice** and **would rather / would sooner** expressing **preference**:

*You'd better keep out of sight until it's all over. Тебе лучше держаться подальше, пока все не закончится.*

*I would rather know the painful truth. Я бы предпочел знать горькую правду.*

The structures **had better + infinitive** and **would rather + infinitive** form a compound verbal modal predicate in sentences with one and the same doer of the action. The forms **had better / had best** and **would rather / would sooner** are **Subjunctive II** forms.

**Had better** is always followed by a bare **non-perfect infinitive** and refers personal advice to the **present/future** (simultaneous with or posterior to the moment of speaking). The negative is formed with **not** after better:

*He had better not go by plane. Ему бы лучше не лететь туда на самолете.*

**Had** here is usually contracted after pronouns and in speech is sometimes so unstressed as to be almost inaudible. **Had better** is not normally used in the ordinary interrogative, but is sometimes used in the **negative interrogative** as an **advice** form:

*Hadn't you better ask him first? Не будет ли лучше спросить его сначала?*

In **indirect speech** **had better** with the first or third person **remains unchanged**; had better with the second person can remain unchanged or be reported by **advise + object + infinitive**:

*He said, 'I'd better hurry' = He said (that) he'd better hurry.*

*He said, 'You'd better hurry' = He said (that) I'd better hurry or He advised me to hurry.*

**Would rather** in simple sentences is followed by a **non-perfect infinitive** if the action refers to the **present** or **future** (is simultaneous with or posterior to the moment of speaking), and by a **perfect** one in the sentences referring to the **past** (prior to the moment of speaking):

*Well, I'd rather have a puppy. Я бы предпочел завести щенка.*

*I would rather not have gone by plane, then I could have saved some money for excursions. Лучше бы я не полетел на самолете, тогда бы я сэкономил денег на экскурсии.*

**The Conditional Mood** is used to denote unreal actions in **simple sentences**:

1) with an adverbial modifier of condition expressed by a **but for**-phrase:

*I wouldn't know that but for you. Я бы не знал этого, если бы не ты.*

2) with **implied condition**:

*I wouldn't waste my time in your place. Я бы на вашем месте не стал терять время.*

3) to sound **polite**, less straight-forward:

*I would think they have a nice bar here in this hotel, don't they? Думаю, у них здесь хороший бар в этом отеле, да?*

**NB!** The **highest** degree of politeness is expressed by a **perfect Conditional Mood** form:

*I should have thought you are wrong. Я считаю, что Вы ошибаетесь.*

The rules we observe in simple sentences may be applied to independent clauses of compound sentences and main clauses of complex sentences:

*I have one friend, I would rather not say his name. У меня есть друг, его имя я бы предпочел не называть.*

*I'd better go and see who it is that does want to see me. Лучше я пойду посмотрю, кто это там так хочет видеть меня.*

## LESSON 1 MOODS IN SIMPLE SENTENCES

**Exercise 1. Identify moods (indicative, oblique, imperative) in the following simple, compound and complex sentences and comment on what actions they represent (real, unreal or problematic, giving a command).**

1. She looked several years younger and there was a new dignity about her.
2. Do as you are told!
3. It was essential that all the participants of the show be on time.
4. I wish I had spent my time more wisely.
5. Take it or leave it.
6. It's highly desirable that you should improve your report.
7. I wouldn't even try to stop him if I were you.
8. When a child I would take a book and read it at night, I would forget to turn off the light and the next day I would get strictly punished.
9. It's highly improbable that she should be planning to meet you now.
10. No one say anything, please.
11. 'I wish it were always like that,' Aidan said.
12. 'What's this?' He didn't sound as if he were going to play along.
13. His mother thought it was time he got married.
14. To hear her, you would think that she herself had been there for Jin-Ho's sake.
15. Is he still here? We should invite him back to the house!
16. 'You act as if you think you're so right that you don't need to bother arguing,' he said.

**Exercise 2. Add one of these common phrases with Subjunctive I to each of the sentences.**

*A. Come what may, suffice it to say, be that as it may, God forbid, so be it, far be it from me*

1. If, \_\_\_\_\_, you were to die, who'd run the business?
2. I don't want to explain. \_\_\_\_\_ Aunt Sarah is coming to stay after all.
3. If you really want to drop out of college, then \_\_\_\_\_.
4. \_\_\_\_\_, I'm determined to finish decorating my room this weekend.
5. \_\_\_\_\_ to tell you what to do, but you'd be mad to marry him.
6. 'This medicine tastes horrible!' '\_\_\_\_\_, it'll cure your cough.'

*B. God bless, Glory be, so be it, God bless, far be it from me, long live, success attend, Heaven forbid, Heaven bless, come what may*

7. \_\_\_\_\_ to the Father and to the Son and to the Holy Spirit.
8. Poor Laddy grew up and was able to take over the farm, \_\_\_\_\_ him if that were ever to happen.
9. 'Ah, \_\_\_\_\_ them,' said Ted. 'What did they think, that they'd be able to use the sword on You-Know-Who? Or on Snape himself?'
10. Good luck, Harry, wherever you are.  
If you read this, Harry, we're all behind you!  
\_\_\_\_\_ Harry Potter.
11. 'That's well,' said my aunt, nodding towards Mr. Peggotty, 'and I drink my love to you all, and every blessing and \_\_\_\_\_ you!'
12. '\_\_\_\_\_ that I should grudge my native country any portion of the wealth that may be accumulated by our descendants!'
13. '\_\_\_\_\_ you, you good man!' cried I. 'You take her with you!'
14. If the water made her sick again, and it probably would, \_\_\_\_\_.
15. \_\_\_\_\_ to marry a woman for her money!
16. Seasons may change, winter to spring, but I love you until the end of time, \_\_\_\_\_, I will love you until my dying day.

**Exercise 3. Open the brackets using the required Oblique mood form.**

1. God \_\_\_\_\_ (*forbid*) that I should stop at that.
2. And what if the truth \_\_\_\_\_ (*come out*)?
3. Mad fool that he is. But little \_\_\_\_\_ (*be*) it from me to try to stop him.
4. Finally she made up her mind to get up, \_\_\_\_\_ (*come*) what might.
5. Far \_\_\_\_\_ (*be*) it from me to cheat at the exam.
6. Heaven \_\_\_\_\_ (*save*) me from an intellectual wife.
7. Blessed \_\_\_\_\_ (*be*) the day of his birth!
8. Everybody \_\_\_\_\_ (*leave*) the room!
9. \_\_\_\_\_ (*be*) yours a lucky choice!
10. And what if we \_\_\_\_\_ (*miss*) the train?

**Exercise 4. Provide the English equivalents of the phrases in brackets.**

1. (Достаточно того, что) that they're on friendly terms.
2. The jury must deliberate now. (Всем покинуть зал суда!)
3. (Будь, что будет!) I'll tell the truth no matter how painful it is.
4. (У меня и в мыслях нет) to offend you!
5. (К черту тест), let's go to the park!
6. (А что, если он вдруг решит) to resign?

**Exercise 5. Respond to the statements by giving advice or making a recommendation with a suitable infinitive form.**

**Model:** I have got toothache. – You **had better** go to the dentist.

1. I can't move the fingers of my left hand.
2. Oh, no, look – my car window's broken.
3. The swimming pool closes in ten minutes.
4. The rain is coming through the roof.
5. Mary got terribly sunburnt yesterday.
6. You're always late for work!
7. Our train leaves in a few minutes.
8. My passport expires next month.
9. There's ice on the roads this morning.
10. There's someone knocking at the door.
11. The milk smells bad.
12. That chair looks very dirty.
13. There's almost no petrol in the car.
14. My husband worries if I'm late.
15. You have to get up early tomorrow.

**Exercise 6. Supply the correct forms of the verbs in brackets.**

**Model:** Which would you sooner \_\_\_\_\_ (*be*)? A pilot or a passenger?

Which **would** you **sooner be**? A pilot or a passenger?

1. But I thought I would rather \_\_\_\_\_ (*ask*) you than \_\_\_\_\_ (*go*) to one of my neighbors.
2. I would rather \_\_\_\_\_ (*not do*) interviews at all if these are the kind that we're getting.
3. I would rather \_\_\_\_\_ (*find*) someone who actually wants to find the perfect gift for a loved one as opposed to someone who couldn't be bothered.
4. My career is nearly over, but I'd much rather \_\_\_\_\_ (*be*) in the navy than in the army.
5. I wasn't going to come in but then I realised there was nowhere else I'd rather \_\_\_\_\_ (*be*).

6. Lou rolled his eyes. 'Ruthy, please, I would rather \_\_\_\_\_ (*stick*) pins in my eyes than \_\_\_\_\_ (*have*) dinner with them.'
7. 'What if someone \_\_\_\_\_ (*see*) me? I'd rather \_\_\_\_\_ (*stay*) here, thank you.'
8. It sounded like he'd rather \_\_\_\_\_ (*not see*) her ever again, or perhaps she was just being paranoid.
9. But it's far more than shyness. Hiroko has that very Japanese terror of doing something imperfectly. She would much rather \_\_\_\_\_ (*not do*) it at all.
10. I'd rather \_\_\_\_\_ (*live*) in the eighteenth century than in the nineteenth century.
11. I like my job. I'd rather \_\_\_\_\_ (*make*) my living as a teacher than anything else.
12. I wish my job were secure. I'd sooner \_\_\_\_\_ (*not have to*) worry about it.
13. I'd rather \_\_\_\_\_ (*hear*) it from him.
14. Jim had to break the bad news to her. I know he'd rather \_\_\_\_\_ (*not have to*) do it.
15. Sue went to France this year, but she says she would rather \_\_\_\_\_ (*go*) to Spain.
16. 'Wouldn't you rather \_\_\_\_\_ (*have*) a cup of tea?'
17. Like all good divers, Rose looked as though there was nowhere else she would rather \_\_\_\_\_ (*be*).

**Exercise 7. Use the verbs in the Subjunctive II mood form to express an unreal wish.**

**Model:** I am out of a job. – **If only/oh, that I found/could find** a job!

It is so foggy today. – **If only** the weather **would improve!**

I couldn't delete that letter. – **If only/oh, that I had taken** a computer course!

1. I live very far from the city centre.
2. It's very hot and I can't stand hot weather.
3. I didn't work hard when I was a student.
4. I didn't bring an umbrella and it's raining.
5. The weather is terrible, and I can't go to the beach.
6. He didn't telephone me before he came.
7. I don't know many people at work.
8. I can't go to the disco with my friends.
9. It is raining and I want to go out.
10. My sister is so noisy.
11. She is so strict with her students.
12. They didn't believe me.
13. A lot of people drop litter in the street.
14. Brad always leaves the door open.
15. I'm looking for a job, but I can't find a vacancy.
16. Your father didn't drive you to school and you got soaked.

## Exercise 8. Translate into English.

1. Я, пожалуй, поищу работу со свободным распорядком дня.
2. Тебе лучше немедленно рассказать все начальнику.
3. Если бы этот день был солнечным и теплым!
4. Вчера мы ходили в кино, но фильм оказался скучным. Я бы предпочла остаться дома.
5. Я бы предпочла получить рекомендательное письмо.
6. Если бы он тогда пришел вовремя! Но он опоздал, как всегда.
7. Почему ты купила такой дорогой подарок? Я бы предпочла выбрать что-нибудь подешевле.
8. Если бы мы сразу подписали тогда контракт!
9. Тебе лучше поехать домой на такси, так как ты долго будешь ждать автобус.
10. Мой брат предпочитает целыми днями смотреть телевизор вместо того, чтобы готовиться к занятиям.
11. Ему лучше не идти на собеседование. Его не станут слушать.
12. Мне бы очень хотелось побыть немного одной.
13. Если бы я мог доказать, что я прав!
14. Ты бы предпочла вчера пойти с нами или остаться с детьми?
15. Я бы предпочла сдать экзамен вчера, чем переносить его на осень.
16. Ему лучше не увольняться с работы сейчас, а подождать, пока не найдется что-нибудь получше.
17. Он бы предпочел остаться в этой гостинице еще на пару дней или уехать пораньше?
18. О, если бы ты не был замешан в этом деле!
19. Я, пожалуй, не буду настаивать на вашем сотрудничестве с нами. Вы сами примете разумное решение.
20. Если бы в молодости он не совершил этой ошибки!

<b>STUDY</b>	We often use <b>would</b> and <b>wouldn't</b> in place of the simple present (and sometimes in place of <b>will/won't</b> ) when we want to sound less definite, or when we want to be very polite: That <b>seems</b> to be a good idea. → That <b>would seem</b> to be a good idea. I <b>think</b> Friday will be OK. → I <b>would think</b> that Friday will be OK. Thursday <b>isn't/won't</b> be convenient. → Thursday <b>would be</b> inconvenient.
--------------	--

## Exercise 9. Replace the verbs in italics with *would* or *wouldn't*.

1. £100 *is* rather expensive for a pair of gloves.
2. I'm sure your proposal *isn't* acceptable to the committee.
3. Does my idea seem reasonable to you? – I *think* so.
4. This new law *doesn't seem* to be fair to pensioners.
5. I'm *not* free on Thursday, but I'm free on Friday.
6. She's offered to help, but I *don't imagine* she's serious.
7. *Does that seem* a reasonable price to offer for a used car?

8. What time *do* you *suggest*?
9. No, Shay, I don't think that *will be* enough.
10. '*Do you want to come in?*' Dom asked.
11. 'Can I hear your poem? Please, Fred. It *will mean* a lot to me.'
12. I *won't let* my brother come near my hair with scissors.
13. I *think* I can do it.
14. I really *don't think* we should run off to some unknown trendy doctor on the say-so of a couple of girls.
15. I *don't believe* this.
16. Is this a practical plan? I *don't think* so!

**Exercise 10. Change the Indicative Mood of the verb into the non-perfect Conditional Mood saying what you wouldn't do in somebody's place.**

**Model:** Fred reads newspapers regularly.

I **wouldn't read** newspapers regularly.

1. My brother doesn't talk to me about his problems.
2. Jane uses her computer every day.
3. She always has porridge for breakfast.
4. Brian never agrees with his father.
5. It was love at first sight.
6. He likes to be up before the rest of the world.
7. She may never see her friend again.
8. He is always late for classes.
9. He often wears a smart suit with a cream shirt and a tie.
10. The friends play golf every weekend.
11. She can't sleep unless her mum reads to her.
12. She is always easy to deal with.
13. The Smiths can afford a big house.
14. David consults his family doctor now and then.
15. Clare never reads instructions and warning labels.
16. He is not a reliable person and can't help you.

**Exercise 11. Discuss the following questions in pairs using the Conditional Mood.**

1. Would you ever eat raw meat or raw fish?
2. Would you ever live in another country?
3. Would you ever consider being a farmer?
4. Would you ever go out with someone you really don't like?
5. Would you ever send yourself a bunch of flowers?
6. Would you ever cheat at the exam?
7. Would you ever cry in a street?

8. Would you ever lie to help a friend?
9. Would you ever spend a month on a desert island?
10. Would you ever marry someone your parents didn't approve of?
11. Would you ever paint your living room black?
12. Would you ever pick up a hitchhiker?
13. Would you ever kiss a frog?
14. Would you ever consider writing your own book?
15. Would you ever adopt a child?
16. Would you ever agree to go without the internet or your phone for a month?
17. Would you ever walk barefoot in a public bathroom?

**Exercise 12. Make the sentences complete using the right form of the Conditional Mood.**

**Model:** But for his help ...

But for his help Jane **wouldn't have done** the task in time.

1. But for the toothache ...
2. But for him ...
3. But for his accent ...
4. But for her advice ...
5. But for your call ...
6. But for Mummy and Daddy ...
7. But for the pizza being too spicy ...
8. But for the book being so interesting ...
9. But for the weather ...
10. But for their efforts ...
11. But for her message ...
12. But for you ...
13. But for this awkward misunderstanding ...
14. But for her embarrassment ...
15. But for the rain ...
16. But for your call ...

**Exercise 13. Translate into English.**

1. Если бы не жара, было бы приятно пройтись пешком до дома.
2. Если бы не иллюстрации, книгу бы было невозможно читать: она слишком скучная.
3. На твоём месте я бы не стал подписывать контракт, не обсудив все детали с юристом.
4. Извините, но мне нужно уйти. Иначе бы мы подольше погуляли по парку.
5. Я бы никогда её не узнала. Она так изменилась.

6. Куда бы вы повесили эту картину?
7. Если бы не работа, он провел бы прошлый уикенд в Париже.
8. Если бы не ее вздорный нрав, она могла бы стать директором этой фирмы.
9. Я бы не стал спорить с человеком, который очень расстроен.
10. Не беспокойтесь, я позвоню Вам. – Была бы очень Вам признательна.

## LESSON 2

### OBLIQUE MOODS IN SIMPLE SENTENCES

#### Exercise 1. Open the brackets using the required Oblique mood form.

##### A.

1. It \_\_\_\_\_ (*to be*) splendid to meet a famous person.
2. He would rather \_\_\_\_\_ (*be*) off buying her another bottle of orange cordial.
3. In your place I \_\_\_\_\_ (*make*) a pizza for supper.
4. One of you \_\_\_\_\_ (*go*) and \_\_\_\_\_ (*clear up*) the mess.
5. You had better \_\_\_\_\_ (*leave*) me in peace.
6. It looks like rain; you \_\_\_\_\_ (*have*) better take a coat.
7. I \_\_\_\_\_ (*advise*) you to make it up with Alex.
8. I'd rather \_\_\_\_\_ (*not interfere*) into his business.
9. Somebody \_\_\_\_\_ (*close*) the window.
10. Oh, that I \_\_\_\_\_ (*follow*) the doctor's advice.
11. You \_\_\_\_\_ (*may*) have told me about the accident!
12. I'd rather \_\_\_\_\_ (*inform*) the passengers about the delay of the plane right now.
13. Everybody \_\_\_\_\_ (*keep*) silent!
14. Oh, that you \_\_\_\_\_ (*have*) more sense than money!
15. We'd better \_\_\_\_\_ (*take*) some money for a taxi in case we miss the last bus home.
16. But for a mere coincidence, Kate \_\_\_\_\_ (*not meet*) him!
17. If only I \_\_\_\_\_ (*not make*) any mistakes in my test yesterday!
18. I \_\_\_\_\_ (*be*) obliged to you for your favour!
19. If only Claire \_\_\_\_\_ (*not change*) her mind again!
20. So \_\_\_\_\_ (*be*) it!
21. But for his parents he \_\_\_\_\_ (*become*) a musician.
22. Oh, that people \_\_\_\_\_ (*be*) less egoistic!
23. If only I \_\_\_\_\_ (*keep*) my mouth shut! (*I said something which made matters much worse.*)
24. In the old times such a match never \_\_\_\_\_ (*take place*).
25. Everyone in your place \_\_\_\_\_ (*be*) happy to get this position.
26. You \_\_\_\_\_ (*can*) have told me that your plans are different now!

27. Somebody \_\_\_\_\_ (*send*) for the doctor at once!
28. In fact, she'd rather \_\_\_\_\_ (*not think*) about men at all at the moment.
29. John had better \_\_\_\_\_ (*not speak*) to me like that again.
30. He says he'd rather \_\_\_\_\_ (*cook*) his own food than eat in restaurants.
31. If only I \_\_\_\_\_ (*be*) insured! (*But I wasn't insured.*)

**B.**

1. Would you rather \_\_\_\_\_ (*write*) in ink or in pencil?
2. If one \_\_\_\_\_ (*can*) only peel her of pretence and insincerity!
3. But for his pusillanimity, Mr. Garstin never \_\_\_\_\_ (*to find*) himself under his wife's thumb.
4. Long \_\_\_\_\_ (*live*) our glorious team!
5. Oh, that he \_\_\_\_\_ (*give*) her a chance!
6. You'd better \_\_\_\_\_ (*choose*) which of us you want, hadn't you?
7. I'd rather \_\_\_\_\_ (*not talk*) about it. After all, it was only a trivial accident.
8. God \_\_\_\_\_ (*save*) the Queen!
9. If only we \_\_\_\_\_ (*have*) a phone! I'm tired of queuing outside the public phone box.
10. You \_\_\_\_\_ (*have*) better take off your wet shoes.
11. 'But I told you what to do.' 'I know you did. If only I \_\_\_\_\_ (*take*) your advice!'
12. If only you \_\_\_\_\_ (*not drive*) so fast! You could have stopped in time.
13. But for her accent, nobody \_\_\_\_\_ (*say*) she is not Russian.
14. Oh, that he \_\_\_\_\_ (*be*) late the other day!
15. If only there \_\_\_\_\_ (*be*) the slightest possibility!
16. One of you \_\_\_\_\_ (*go*) and \_\_\_\_\_ (*find out*) if there are tickets at the box-office.
17. \_\_\_\_\_ (*be*) ours a happy journey!
18. And what if she \_\_\_\_\_ (*not notice*) the error in time?
19. I'd sooner \_\_\_\_\_ (*be*) poor than a thief.
20. In your place I \_\_\_\_\_ (*not come*) and \_\_\_\_\_ (*talk*) with him.
21. But for their help, it \_\_\_\_\_ (*take*) more days to get through with it.
22. If only I \_\_\_\_\_ (*be*) young again!
23. I'd rather \_\_\_\_\_ (*spend*) this money on something frivolous.
24. Somebody \_\_\_\_\_ (*come*) and \_\_\_\_\_ (*help*) me with this socket!
25. But for my smile, he \_\_\_\_\_ (*believe*) me.
26. If he doesn't want to see us, then so \_\_\_\_\_ (*be*) it.
27. If only he \_\_\_\_\_ (*know*) then that the disease was curable!
28. And what if the money \_\_\_\_\_ (*not arrive*) on time?
29. There's very little chance of winning this case. \_\_\_\_\_ (*be*) that as it may, I'm not going to give up fighting.
30. If only nuclear bombs \_\_\_\_\_ (*not invent*)!

## Exercise 2. Comment on the form and usage of the Oblique mood form.

**Model:** I **wouldn't do** that in your place.

**Wouldn't do** is used in the **Conditional Mood** in its **non-perfect** form in a simple sentence **with implied condition**. The non-perfect form refers the unreal action to the **present** (shows that the action is **simultaneous** with the **moment of speaking**).

1. Put simply, what **would** you **say** this poem is about?
2. If only I **were** back home.
3. Anyone **would have thought** we were tourists.
4. Let's just say I **would rather be biting off** live bat heads.
5. Everyone **go** and **get** an ice lolly.
6. 'You'd **better sign on** to get some money, anyway.' Brenda was always practical.
7. If only he **knew** why she'd really done it.
8. Oh, that such an idea **had been realized!**
9. Manners **be hanged!**
10. But for my friendship with Elliot, I **should** doubtless **have forgotten** Larry's existence.
11. I may visit you. – I **should be charmed.**
12. And what if they **should see** us?
13. 'But you'll get compensation for your injury – quite a lot of money. More than enough, I **would have thought**, to buy a horse.'
14. 'Well, we all occasionally have to do things that we'd really **rather not be doing,**' Nina said.
15. Peace **be** with you. Success **attend** you!
16. 'You'd **better not snore** tonight or I'll suffocate you with a pillow.'
17. Everybody **stand up!**
18. 'I **should think** you'll be a great father, Nick.'
19. And what if the truth **should come out?**
20. 'So one might have guessed. **Would** you **care** to give us an example?'
21. Oh, my dear, if only you **could manage** that!
22. But for John I **wouldn't have learnt** all the truth.
23. Although we do not fully examine reflexive pronouns until Chapter 16, **suffice** it to say here that the object of a reflexive verb must be identical in reference to the subject of the same sentence.

## Exercise 3. What would you say in the following situations? Make up dialogues with your partner using simple sentences with oblique moods.

1. You advise your friend to buy this car instead of that one.
2. You are unhappy because Andrew didn't warn you about the change in the schedule.

3. You ask the waiter to bring you the bill.
4. You wish them success.
5. You didn't even think of arguing with the teacher.
6. You want everybody to write down all your words.
7. You ask your friend to do you a favour.
8. You wanted to pass your exam but you didn't. You regret it.

**Exercise 4. Discuss the following questions in pairs or in small groups.**

1. Would you rather be permanently bald or always have floor-length hair?
2. Would you rather find your soul mate or find a billion dollars?
3. Would you rather be poor and happy or rich and unhappy?
4. Would you rather be able to stop time or fly?
5. Would you rather always have a big smile on your face or always have a big frown?
6. Would you rather love and not be loved back, or be loved but never love?
7. Would you rather be gossiped about or never talked about at all?
8. Would you rather be a child or an adult for the rest of your life?
9. Would you rather talk in a very deep voice or in a high-pitched, squeaky voice?
10. Would you rather be human or be immortal?
11. Would you rather sing every word you speak or always speak in rhymes?
12. Would you rather be a deep-sea diver or an astronaut?
13. Would you rather live in a home without electricity or in a home without running water?
14. Would you rather be the richest person on the planet or immortal?
15. Would you rather have the ability to be invisible or have the ability to be invincible?
16. Would you rather be a vampire or a ghost?
17. Would you rather speak all foreign languages fluently or be able to talk to animals?
18. Would you rather have lived in the past than in the present?
19. Would you rather sing everything you say, or dance every time you move?
20. Which would you rather lose – your sense of taste or sense of smell?

**Exercise 5. Either finish the sentences or think of an appropriate beginning of the sentences with an Oblique mood form.**

1. But for his advice...
2. And what if you...
3. Nobody...
4. ...than ask your groupmates for a hint.
5. If only I...
6. But for his being so helpful...
7. Oh, that he...

8. ...than be present at the lecture.
9. Hadn't you better...
10. I'd rather not...
11. Would you rather...?
12. If only you hadn't...
13. But for my parents...
14. Somebody...
15. Far be it from me to...
16. ...Heaven forbid!

### **Exercise 6. Translate into English.**

1. Да будет благословенна эта земля!
2. А что, если он вдруг раньше вернется?
3. У меня и в мыслях не было навязывать вам свои взгляды.
4. Счастливого тебе путешествия!
5. Каждый берет с собой еды на два дня.
6. Ах, если бы я могла позволить себе поездку на Кипр!
7. Будь что будет, я попытаюсь устроиться на эту работу.
8. А что, если она вдруг забудет о своем обещании?
9. Она бы сделала все возможное, но ее сейчас нет.
10. Спасибо за совет, но я лучше сделаю по-своему.
11. Ричард очень пунктуальный и ни за что не опоздал бы без причины.
12. Если бы не случай, он бы провалил экзамен.
13. Кто-нибудь, помогите!
14. Я бы присоединился к вашей компании, если бы не внезапный приезд моего знакомого.
15. Раньше она не обратила бы на это внимания.
16. Я бы вам такого не посоветовала.
17. У него просто совсем нет свободного времени. Иначе он давно бы уже навестил нас.
18. К черту ваши идеи!
19. Хорошо, что Майкл сам отказался ехать. А то сейчас бы ворчал и действовал всем на нервы.
20. Ах, если бы я мог остаться тут, с вами!
21. Если бы не гроза, мы бы не сидели сейчас дома!
22. Да оставь ты свои глупые идеи! Если бы не ты, мы бы уже давно переехали в новый дом!
23. Ах, если бы мы тогда знали всю правду.
24. Если бы не работа, Джек посмотрел бы всю пьесу.
25. Пусть кто-нибудь сообщит ей об этом.
26. А что, если он нас вдруг подведет?
27. Мы бы предпочли, чтобы нам позвонили, прежде чем доставлять диван.
28. Боже, храни короля!

29. Если бы мы только могли убедить его не уезжать! Работа была бы уже завершена!
30. Всем оставаться на своих местах.
31. Достаточно сказать, что он не настолько глуп, как вы полагаете.
32. Если бы не мороз, он бы завел машину утром.
33. А что бы вы сделали на моем месте? – Я бы уехала.
34. Эмма купила новое платье. Я бы посоветовала ей не тратить так много денег.
35. А что, если он забудет сказать остальным?
36. Хорошо, что мы поторопились. Иначе мы опоздали бы на поезд.
37. Да будет так! Пусть вам сопутствует успех!
38. Тебе лучше остаться сегодня дома.
39. Если бы не его рассеянность, он не забыл бы свои очки дома.
40. Тебе лучше никому об этом не рассказывать.
41. Что вы сказали? Не могли бы вы повторить это?
42. Если бы не это глупое замечание Майкла, Джейн не обиделась бы.
43. Это не в моем характере – распространять сплетни.
44. На вашем месте я бы употребляла меньше сладкого.
45. Удачи вам на экзамене!
46. А что если начнется гроза?
47. Какой сладкий джем! Я бы не положила так много сахара.
48. Да чтобы я вмешался в их конфликт! Боже упаси!
49. Я бы предпочла никогда больше не встречаться с этими людьми.
50. Если бы не простуда, я бы ни за что не пропустил тот футбольный матч.
51. Да будет ваша жизнь долгой и счастливой! Храни вас Бог!
52. Я бы предпочла об этом не говорить.
53. Долой манеры!
54. Я бы предпочла узнать эту новость первой.
55. Я бы предпочел, чтобы со мной разговаривали, как со взрослым.
56. Будь что будет, давайте попробуем поработать вместе.
57. Джейн едет отдыхать в Италию. – А я бы поехала на Кипр.
58. Вот если бы я только узнал это вчера!
59. Я бы предпочел остаться неузнанным.

**Exercise 7. Write a story of at least 10–15 sentences. Make sure to use the Oblique mood forms in as many sentences as possible.**

### THE OBLIQUE MOODS IN NOMINAL AND ATTRIBUTIVE CLAUSES

A complex sentence contains a **main clause** and one or more **subordinate clauses**. A main clause is one that can stand alone, it is independent on another clause. A subordinate clause is a group of words containing a subject and a predicate and forming part of a sentence, it is a kind of modifier to the main

clause. Subordinate clauses resemble in their function and meaning parts of a simple sentence (subject, predicative, object, attribute, apposition, adverbial modifier).

Traditionally, subordinate clauses are arranged in three groups: **nominal** clauses (that is, clauses functioning as nouns in various syntactic positions), **attributive** (or relative) clauses, and **adverbial** clauses.

All **nominal** clauses perform a function similar to that of a noun or a nominal phrase. They are very strongly connected with the main clause, and if such a clause is removed, both the structure and meaning of the sentence are changed or become ungrammatical.

A **subject clause**, when it follows the predicate, always has the formal introductory **it** at the beginning of the sentence. In sentences beginning with '**it's (high) time**' followed by an **attributive** clause **it** is the formal impersonal **it**.

*It is necessary **that all (should) work hard.*** (a subject clause)

*It's high time **you were back home.*** (an attributive clause)

An **object** clause completes or restricts the meaning of the predicate.

*We feared (what?) **lest he (should) come.***

A **predicative** clause is used immediately after a **link verb** and without it the meaning of the sentence is not complete.

*Our requirement is **that all (should) work hard.***

An **attributive** clause we find only after '**it's (high) time**'.

*It's high time **you were back home.***

An **attributive appositive** clause is found after **abstract nouns** and expresses **the same idea** the abstract noun has in different words.

*Do you accept **our requirement that all should work hard** = Do you accept **our requirement?** = Do you accept **that all should work hard?***

## A. SUBJUNCTIVE II IN NOMINAL AND ATTRIBUTIVE CLAUSES

**Subjunctive II** is used:

1) In **object** clauses after **would rather / would sooner**:

*I **would rather/sooner you were here with me.** Я бы предпочла, чтобы ты была здесь со мной.*

**Would rather / would sooner** is followed by an object clause with the predicate verb in its **Subjunctive II** form when the speaker expresses **preferences** about other people's actions. **Non-perfect Subjunctive II** of the predicate verb

is used when the action refers to the **present or future** (**simultaneous** with or **posterior** to the moment of speaking), **perfect Subjunctive II** is used if the action refers to the **past** (**prior** to the moment of speaking).

Note that for a negative preference **negative Subjunctive II** form is used.

*I would rather she wrote to me more often. Я бы предпочла, чтобы она писала мне чаще.*

*I would rather he hadn't told me about that. Я бы предпочла, чтобы он не рассказывал мне об этом.*

2) in **object** clauses after the verb **wish** as the predicate in the main clause.

If the action expressed in the object clause is **simultaneous** with or **posterior** to that of the main clause **non-perfect Subjunctive II** is used to represent a personal **wish** or **regret**:

*I wish we were both about ten years older than we are. Жаль, что мы оба не на 10 лет старше.*

If the action expressed in the object clause is **prior** to that of the main clause **perfect Subjunctive II** is used to represent a personal **regret** about a past situation:

*I wish I hadn't said that. Жаль, что я это сказал.*

Sentences with **wish**-clauses express regret and are often translated by means of 'я бы хотел', 'мне бы хотелось'. When rendering them into Russian it is possible to use a clause with the opposite meaning, introduced by 'жаль', 'как жаль', 'какая жалость' or by the finite form of the verb 'сожалеть'.

*I wish she felt as I do. Мне бы хотелось, чтобы она чувствовала то, что я чувствую. (Жаль, что она не чувствует то, что чувствую я.)*

**Would + infinitive** can be used in **object** clauses after the verb **wish** as the predicate in the main **clause** and in **simple sentences** after **if only** in sentences referring to the **present** or **future** (posterior to the moment of speaking). **Would + infinitive** in **object** clauses is possible only and when the subjects of the subordinate and main clauses do not denote the same thing / person. **Would + infinitive** forms a compound verbal modal predicate, the modal verb **would** is used in its **Subjunctive II** form in the meaning of **polite request** or **annoyance**.

*I wish you would let Mary help you. Мне бы хотелось, чтобы ты позволил Мэри помочь тебе.*

*I wish you wouldn't sing in the bath. Мне бы хотелось, чтобы ты перестал петь в ванной.*

**Would + infinitive** shows that the fulfillment of the wish depends on the will of the person denoted by the subject of the subordinate clause:

*I wish you would treat me better. Мне бы хотелось, чтобы ты лучше ко мне относился.*

If the fulfillment of the wish depends more on the **circumstances**, **could + infinitive** is preferable. **Could + infinitive forms** a compound verbal modal predicate, the modal verb **could** is used in its **Subjunctive II** form in the meaning of **lack of possibility due to circumstances**, a **non-perfect infinitive** shows that the action is simultaneous with / posterior to the action shown by the finite verb form in the main clause, a **perfect** one shows that the action is prior to the action shown by the finite verb form in the main clause:

*I wish I could help you. Жаль, что я не могу помочь тебе.*

*I only wish I could have been there with you. Как жаль, что я не смог быть там с тобой.*

**If only** means the same as **I wish** but is more emphatic.

*If only I had been here yesterday! Если бы только я был здесь вчера!*

*If only you would try to keep the place tidy! Если бы только ты поддерживал у себя порядок!*

*If only I could have helped you yesterday! Если бы только я могла помочь тебе вчера!*

- 3) in **attributive** clauses after the expression **it is (high/about) time** in the main clause only **non-perfect Subjunctive II** is used:

*It is time I made up my mind. Пора мне уже решить.*

- 4) in **predicative** clauses introduced by the conjunctions **as if, as though**. The predicative clauses with **Subjunctive II** immediately follow the **link** verbs **be, seem, look, feel, sound**. When the action is simultaneous with the predicate verb in the main clause **non-perfect Subjunctive II** is used, when the action is prior to the predicate verb in the main clause **perfect Subjunctive II** is used.

After **as if / as though were** is more usual than **was**:

*It was as if she were trying to tell him something. Она словно пыталась сказать ему что-то.*

*I feel as though I had never been away. У меня такое чувство, словно / как будто я никуда не уезжал.*

- 5) in **indirect questions** introduced by the conjunctions **if** or **whether** after the expression of **doubt**. Indirect questions are considered to be object clauses.

In expressions of doubt **were** is more usual than **was**:

*I doubted whether it were possible. Я сомневался, что это возможно.*

*Wondering if he were sick, I went out to find him. Теряясь в догадках, болен ли он, я отправился искать его.*

**LESSON 3**  
**SUBJUNCTIVE II IN OBJECT CLAUSES AFTER *WOULD RATHER* AND *WISH***  
**IN THE MAIN CLAUSE**

<b>STUDY</b>	<p><b>1.</b> We can refer to other people after <b>would rather</b> or <b>would sooner</b>. Compare:  <b>I'd rather leave</b> on an earlier train. (= I'm referring to myself)  <b>I'd rather Jack</b> (etc.) <b>left</b> on an earlier train.</p> <p><b>2.</b> We use a non-perfect Subjunctive II form after <b>would rather</b> to show that the action is simultaneous with or posterior to the moment of speaking. Compare:  <b>I'd rather be</b> happy. <b>I'd rather not sit</b> next to her. (= now – I'm referring to myself)  <b>I'd rather she were/was</b> happy. <b>I'd rather she didn't sit</b> next to me. (= now)</p> <p><b>3.</b> We use a perfect Subjunctive II form after <b>would rather</b> to show that the action is prior to the moment of speaking. Compare:  <b>I'd rather have been</b> present. (= then – I'm referring to myself)  <b>I'd rather you had been</b> present. <b>I'd rather you hadn't told</b> me about it. (= then)</p>
--------------	---

**Exercise 1. Supply the correct forms of the verbs in brackets in the following object clauses.**

**Model:** How angry I am! I'd rather you \_\_\_\_\_ (*not tell*) me that news.  
 How angry I am! I'd rather you **hadn't told** me that news.

1. You might be late for the meeting. I'd rather you \_\_\_\_\_ (*catch*) an earlier train.
2. I won't be home till very late. I'd sooner you \_\_\_\_\_ (*not wait up*) for me.
3. He took a risk investing money with them. I'd rather he \_\_\_\_\_ (*not do*) it.
4. I don't mind your borrowing my ladder, but I'd sooner you \_\_\_\_\_ (*ask*) me first.
5. I know our daughter is enjoying herself, but I'd rather she \_\_\_\_\_ (*be*) here than abroad.
6. I'd rather you \_\_\_\_\_ (*be*) present when we signed the agreement.
7. We would sooner you \_\_\_\_\_ (*do*) the work yourself.
8. We would rather you \_\_\_\_\_ (*go*) to bed now.
9. I would rather you \_\_\_\_\_ (*find*) a job.
10. I would rather you \_\_\_\_\_ (*stay*) in a hostel than in a hotel.
11. I would sooner you \_\_\_\_\_ (*go*) home now.
12. We would rather you \_\_\_\_\_ (*allow*) us to stay than \_\_\_\_\_ (*show*) where the nearest hotel is.
13. They would rather she \_\_\_\_\_ (*make*) her own mistakes in her test tomorrow than \_\_\_\_\_ (*do*) the work for her.
14. Your boyfriend keeps calling you. I'd rather your boyfriend \_\_\_\_\_ (*stop*) calling you in the middle of the night.
15. I didn't go to bed early. She would rather I \_\_\_\_\_ (*go*) to bed earlier.
16. 'I think Ruth would rather you \_\_\_\_\_ (*come*) home alone tonight,' Gabe said.

**Exercise 2. Supply negative short responses or continuations to these sentences.**

**Model: Frank is going to buy a bike. – I'd rather he didn't.**

**I haven't told anyone about it. – I'd rather you had.**

**You always go without me and – I'd rather you didn't.**

1. Joan wants to become self-employed.
2. I've told everyone about it.
3. Frank won't give up his present job.
4. Susan has moved her account to another bank.
5. Bill takes sleeping pills.
6. I often drive fast.
7. Frank went to live to Australia last year.
8. Our neighbours have cut down all the trees at the back of their garden.
9. I know you've already booked our holiday, but...
10. Jane cycles to work every day, but...
11. Alan retired early last year, but...
12. He punched the billboard so hard his fist went right through the pressboard backing.
13. She watered the plants.
14. I don't know what to feel about that.
15. I am mad at you because you're making me wait.
16. Martine's health began to deteriorate soon after giving birth.
17. Martine Evans is 37 and has idiopathic juvenile arthritis.

**Exercise 3. Write a word or a short phrase in each gap so that each second sentence should have a similar meaning to the first sentence.**

1. We'd prefer the successful candidate to have previous experience in the field.  
We'd rather the successful candidate \_\_\_\_\_ previous experience in the field.
2. Would you prefer me to come back later?  
Would you rather I \_\_\_\_\_ later?
3. To be honest, I'd prefer you not to tell anyone about this.  
To be honest, I'd rather you \_\_\_\_\_ anyone about this.
4. I'd prefer us to get a new kitchen rather than go on an expensive holiday.  
I'd sooner we \_\_\_\_\_ a new kitchen rather than \_\_\_\_\_ on an expensive holiday.
5. I would prefer her to be sent on a training course rather than sacked.  
I would rather she \_\_\_\_\_ on a training course rather than sacked.
6. I'd prefer us not to talk about it right now, if you don't mind.  
I'd sooner we \_\_\_\_\_ about it right now, if you don't mind.
7. Of course, I would have preferred you to tell me the truth!  
Of course, I would rather you \_\_\_\_\_ me the truth!
8. Dad said he'd prefer Brian to be living nearer home and I agree with him.  
Dad said he'd sooner Brian \_\_\_\_\_ nearer home and I agree with him.

9. We would have preferred them not to have stayed so long, that's true.  
We would rather they \_\_\_\_\_ so long, that's true.
10. They would prefer their son to build a new house than repair the old one.  
They would rather their son \_\_\_\_\_ a new house than \_\_\_\_\_ the old one.
11. He would prefer his friends to face the enemy than surrender.  
He would rather his friends \_\_\_\_\_ the enemy than \_\_\_\_\_.
12. We would prefer them to have read the article by now.  
We would rather they \_\_\_\_\_ the article by now.
13. Would you prefer him to take the first prize?  
Would you rather he \_\_\_\_\_ the first prize?
14. I'd prefer her to save up rather than spend all the money.  
I'd sooner she \_\_\_\_\_ rather than \_\_\_\_\_ all the money.

#### Exercise 4. Put in the missing preferences.

Most parents \_\_\_\_\_ (their children / not decide) to join the acting profession because it is so hard to earn a living. They \_\_\_\_\_ (their children / choose) secure, well-paid jobs. But if you ask actors themselves, they always tell you there is nothing they \_\_\_\_\_ (do). An actor is a person who \_\_\_\_\_ (be) a different man or woman. An actor \_\_\_\_\_ (talk, walk and behave) like someone else. That's what acting is about. Many actors \_\_\_\_\_ (be) called something other than their real names. The great American comic actor Claude William Dukenfield \_\_\_\_\_ (be) called W.C. Fields, which was the name he adopted when he became an actor. Fields was eccentric and \_\_\_\_\_ (live) in a world in which there were no dogs or children. He used to wear a funny top hat and carry a walking-stick. He loved to pretend to be other people in real life as well. He opened bank accounts all over America using comic names. He died in 1946 and the epitaph he wrote for his tombstone clearly expressed a healthy preference for life: 'On the whole, I \_\_\_\_\_ (be) in Philadelphia!'

#### Exercise 5. Comment on the use of Subjunctive II forms.

**Model:** I would rather you **did** your homework.

**Did** is used in its **non-perfect Subjunctive II** form. It is used in the **object** clause of a complex sentence after the modal phrase **would rather** in the main clause. The non-perfect form shows **simultaneity** with the **moment of speaking**/refers the action to the **present**.

1. Oh, Fiona, if only you **knew**... that's the least of the problems.
2. I think we'd **better take** it, to be safe.
3. I'd **rather face** a troop of charging bears than The One Who Is The One.
4. I wish I **hadn't told** you that.
5. Pat **would rather not have talked** during the examination test.
6. Not for the first time he wished that he **loved** a different kind of person.
7. If only he **had known** it would be so simple.

8. They **would rather** their boss **hadn't promised** them a pay rise.
9. Oh, Vera, I wish you **could see** her.
10. Well, but for my parents and my brothers I **d get** California rolls.
11. I wish you **would understand** it's not easy for him either.
12. 'Is there something I can do?' Nina dared to ask. – 'I wish you **would**. I wish you **would!**' he said.
13. I always wished I **could be** more like you.
14. 'I'd rather she **d brought** me a present, Jin.' Ho said.
15. My first inclination is to laugh. 'You'd rather it **were** you?' I scoff.
16. Fiona wished she **hadn't spoken**, as she so often wished.
17. I rather wished I **d talked** to her more.
18. He wished that he **weren't** an only child, that he had six brothers and sisters to share this with.
19. I wish something exciting **would happen**.

<b>STUDY</b>	<p>We use <b>I wish ... would ...</b> when we want something to happen or when we want somebody to do something. The speaker is not happy with the present situation.  <i>The phone has been ringing for five minutes. – I wish somebody would answer it.</i>  <i>It is raining. Jill wants to go out, but not in the rain. She says: I wish / if only it would stop raining! (This means Jill is complaining about the rain and wants it to stop.)</i></p> <p>You can use <b>I wish ... wouldn't ...</b> to complain about things people do repeatedly:  <i>I wish you wouldn't interrupt me.</i></p> <p>We use <b>I wish ... wouldn't</b> for actions and changes, not situations. Compare:  <i>I wish Sarah would come. (I want her to come)</i>  <i>I wish Sarah were here now. (I wish Sarah would be...)</i>  <i>I wish I had a car. (I wish I would have...)</i></p>
--------------	---

### Exercise 6. Match the comments with the answers.

- |   |   |
|---|---|
| <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. I feel so old</li> <li>2. The plants in the garden are dying</li> <li>3. We never hear from Angela</li> <li>4. We didn't know you were ill</li> <li>5. I can't afford to go out</li> <li>6. It takes hours to get to work</li> <li>7. She looked absolutely lovely</li> <li>8. We don't see you very often</li> <li>9. Now everyone knows the secret</li> </ol> | <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>A. I wish it would rain</li> <li>B. I wish you had told me</li> <li>C. I wish we lived nearer the office</li> <li>D. I wish you could come more often</li> <li>E. I wish I hadn't told everyone</li> <li>F. I wish I were younger</li> <li>G. I wish she would write more often</li> <li>H. I wish I had more money</li> <li>I. I wish I could have taken a photo</li> </ol> |
|---|---|

### Exercise 7. What is the fact behind the following wishes?

1. If only I **had** more time for my hobbies.
2. I wish it **hadn't rained** so much. The garden's turned to mud.
3. If only I **hadn't parked** there, I wouldn't have got a fine.

4. I wish I **didn't have** to go to your nephew's wedding.
5. I wish you **weren't** so horrible to your brother. He's a really nice bloke.
6. If only we **hadn't bought** a Hewlett Packard printer. The cartridges are so expensive.
7. I wish Jorge **wouldn't drive** so fast. It's only a matter of time before he kills someone.
8. If only I **had** the money to go to John's wedding in the States.
9. I wish I **hadn't got** drunk and kissed Samantha.
10. I wish I **hadn't told** her she'd put on weight. She hates me now.
11. If only it **would rain**. The garden's as dry as a bone.
12. I wish it **rained** more often in Valencia.
13. I wish the council **hadn't demolished** that beautiful old house. It was part of the town's heritage.
14. I wish you **wouldn't speak** to your mother like that.
15. If only I **could lose** some weight!
16. I wish I **were earning** a reasonable salary.

**Exercise 8. Are these sentences right or wrong? Correct the ones that are wrong.**

1. I wish Jane would be here now.
2. I wish you would listen to me.
3. He wished Robin would give him some kind of task.
4. I wish I would be artistic.
5. I wish you'd answered my e-mails.
6. I wish life would be less complicated.
7. I wish I had fewer sentences to translate.
8. I wish I would have more money.
9. I wish it wouldn't be so cold today.
10. I wish the weather would change.
11. I wish I would have more spare time.
12. I wish you wouldn't complain all the time.
13. I wish I wouldn't be so tired.
14. I wish everything wouldn't be so expensive.
15. I wish I would have a new car.
16. He wished Lizzie would stop talking about a holiday.

**Exercise 9. Make up sentences with *I wish*, expressing:**

**A. Regrets referring to the present/future (the action is simultaneous/posterior to the predicate in the main clause):**

**Model:** It's raining very hard.

**I wish it weren't raining** so hard.

1. My hair is in a mess.

2. I hardly hear from you.
3. The plane is leaving at 5.30 a.m.
4. A taxi ride to the airport costs 50€.
5. You work too hard.
6. We have to work tomorrow.
7. I'm not lying on a beautiful sunny beach.
8. She doesn't want to go shopping with me.
9. There is no shuttle service to the airport.
10. We can't wait any longer.
11. Oh, it's raining again!
12. We are taking that Physics exam tomorrow.
13. He can't give up smoking.

**B. Regrets referring to the past (the action is prior to the predicate in the main clause):**

**Model:** Frank failed his driving test.

**I wish** Frank **hadn't failed** his driving test.

1. He hasn't really understood what I told him.
2. I've made a terrible mistake.
3. There hasn't been any news.
4. He was very rude.
5. I fell and broke my leg.
6. He called me an idiot.
7. I've lost my bicycle.
8. They booked their tour with an unreliable agency.
9. We haven't been running this company.
10. Mark told his neighbours they were wrong.
11. We have borrowed a big sum of money to start the business.
12. I punched him in the nose.
13. There was an unexpected call then.

**C. Polite requests or annoyance (the action is posterior to the predicate in the main clause):**

**Model:** Peter doesn't give up smoking.

**I wish** Peter **would give up** smoking.

1. Susan isn't working very hard for her exams.
2. John never comes home before twelve o'clock.
3. She keeps telling lies.
4. Don is playing football all the time.
5. Richard doesn't wear a tie very often.

6. You will talk all the time.
7. The car won't start.
8. Paul takes too many days off.
9. He won't get to school on time.
10. David misses English classes regularly.
11. My boyfriend will hang out with his friends all the time.
12. Jane is arguing with her parents all the time.
13. Mark isn't polite to his grandparents.

**Exercise 10. Fill in the gaps with the appropriate auxiliary verb.**

1. She had her hair permed and now she *wishes* she **hadn't**.
2. Her husband spends a lot of money and she *wishes* he \_\_\_\_\_.
3. I suspect they'll be late again, but I *wish* they \_\_\_\_\_.
4. She always forgets people's names, but she *wishes* she \_\_\_\_\_.
5. He invited 20 people for dinner then he *wished* he \_\_\_\_\_.
6. She doesn't know how to use a computer, but she *wishes* she \_\_\_\_\_.
7. They never ring before coming round, but I *wish* they \_\_\_\_\_.
8. You are always interfering in my affairs and I *wish* you \_\_\_\_\_.
9. We didn't invite the Smiths, but I *wished* we \_\_\_\_\_.
10. You told them I could do the job but I *wish* you \_\_\_\_\_.
11. They didn't buy the antique vase, but they *wished* they \_\_\_\_\_.
12. He probably won't listen, but I *wish* he \_\_\_\_\_.
13. I didn't see the programme but I *wished* I \_\_\_\_\_.
14. She's not qualified enough for the job, but she *wishes* she \_\_\_\_\_.
15. He can't afford to buy her a diamond ring, but he *wishes* he \_\_\_\_\_.
16. She hasn't got a fax machine, but she *wishes* she \_\_\_\_\_.

<b>STUDY</b>	<p>We do not generally use <b>I wish</b> + an <b>object clause</b> for wishes that seem <b>possible</b> in the future. We often use <b>hope</b> in this sense and a present tense with a future meaning after that:</p> <p><i>I hope you pass (= will pass) your exams. (NOT <del>I wish you would pass your exams.</del>)</i></p> <p><i>I hope you feel better (= will feel better) tomorrow. (NOT <del>I wish you felt better tomorrow.</del>)</i></p> <p><i>I hope she likes (= will like) the flowers. (NOT <del>I wish she liked the flowers.</del>)</i></p>
--------------	---

**Exercise 11. Supply the correct forms of the verbs in brackets in the following object clauses.**

1. I wish I \_\_\_\_\_ (*meet*) that actor when he was in town.
2. He wishes he \_\_\_\_\_ (*buy*) that book last week – now he hasn't got enough money.
3. I wish I \_\_\_\_\_ (*can*) remember where that book is.

4. Tony wishes he \_\_\_\_\_ (*go*) to Paris with his brother, but he has to work.
5. I wish I \_\_\_\_\_ (*not make*) that mistake yesterday.
6. I wish the dog \_\_\_\_\_ (*not eat*) the tickets – now we can't go to the show.
7. If only this box \_\_\_\_\_ (*not be*) so heavy – I can't lift it.
8. We wish we \_\_\_\_\_ (*not leave*) the gate open. Now the dog has escaped.
9. Paula wishes she \_\_\_\_\_ (*have*) more time for gardening, but she doesn't.
10. Ms Brown wishes she \_\_\_\_\_ (*write*) those letters yesterday.
11. Eva smiled. 'I hope it \_\_\_\_\_ (*work*).'
12. If only the holidays \_\_\_\_\_ (*come*) so we could go off to the seaside.
13. I wish I \_\_\_\_\_ (*bring*) my camera with me yesterday evening.
14. They wish they \_\_\_\_\_ (*win*) the game.
15. I just hope they \_\_\_\_\_ (*catch*) him.
16. I wish I \_\_\_\_\_ (*meet*) him yesterday.
17. I wish I \_\_\_\_\_ (*not travel*) to Jamaica last winter.
18. I hope you \_\_\_\_\_ (*have*) a happy Christmas!
19. I wish I \_\_\_\_\_ (*not marry*) you twenty years ago!
20. I wish I \_\_\_\_\_ (*not eat*) so much last night.

**Exercise 12. Rewrite the sentences using *I wish*.**

**Model:** I haven't got a car. I would very much like to have one.  
I wish I *had* a car.

1. I went to bed late last night. I regret it now.
2. We don't live in a nice big flat. I would like us to.
3. I didn't buy that dress. I regret it now.
4. He won't stop shouting. I would like him to.
5. I lost my temper. I regret it now.
6. You didn't tell me the truth. I am very sorry that you didn't.
7. You're playing that music. I would like you to stop playing it, but I don't expect that you will.
8. I didn't go to that concert. I regret it now.
9. I don't have an interesting job. I would like my job to be more interesting.
10. My family live a long way from here. I would like them to live nearer to me.
11. You're not listening to me. I feel annoyed about it and I would like you to listen to me, but I don't think you will.
12. I am not with him now. I would very much like to be.
13. I spent all my money on that new coat. I regret it now.
14. It's a shame we didn't go out for dinner.
15. I do not have many friends here.
16. It's a pity I can't go out tonight but I have to work late.
17. It's a shame we didn't go home for Christmas.
18. I regret that we didn't see the band play.
19. It's a pity that you didn't tell us you were leaving.
20. Unfortunately I am not as agile as I used to be.

**Exercise 13. Translate the fragments in brackets into English.**

1. They wish you (читали) more than you are.
2. They wished you (читали) more than you were.
3. They wish you (читали) more than you have.
4. They wished you (читали) more in future.
5. She wishes we (смогли понять) the reason for her quitting the job.
6. I wish (меня поняли) at the conference next week.
7. She wished they (не заметили) her embarrassment when she was speaking.
8. We wished he (не слышал) what she was speaking about.
9. (Жаль, что вы пришли) so late.
10. (Жаль, что вы не пришли) earlier.
11. (Обидно, что мы ушли) before he came.
12. (Обидно, что мы не дождались) for his coming.
13. (К сожалению, он еще ничего не знает) about her marriage.
14. (К сожалению, он уже все знает) about her marriage.
15. I wish he (не был таким легкомысленным).
16. I wish he (был более серьезным).
17. I wished I (послушал его совета).
18. I wished I (не последовал его совету).

**Exercise 14. Imagine that you have 5 wishes which could immediately come true. What wishes would you make? Write them down and compare them with those of your classmates. Then write on the board the three wishes that have the most votes.**

1. \_\_\_\_\_
2. \_\_\_\_\_
3. \_\_\_\_\_
4. \_\_\_\_\_
5. \_\_\_\_\_

**Exercise 15. Oral activity.**

**1. Think of what you did or didn't do last week. Are there things you wish *had done* or *hadn't done*? Make a list of five sentences expressing your *regrets*.**

**Model:** I wish I **had called** my mother last Saturday.

I wish I **hadn't torn** my best shirt.

**2. Think about all the things you wanted to do last year but *didn't do*. Make a list of ten sentences expressing your *regrets*.**

**Model:** I wish I **had passed** my History exam.

I wish I **hadn't forgotten** my friend's birthday.

**3. Think about all the things you would like to have or the kind of person you would like to be. Make a list of ten sentences expressing your wish or regret with the help of *if only*.**

**Model:** If only I **had** more pocket money, I could buy some new clothes.

If only I **were** a famous actor, I could live in a house with a big swimming pool.

**Exercise 16. Translate the following sentences.**

1. Жаль, что сентябрь так быстро пролетел.
2. Жаль, что я не выучил эту песню.
3. Жаль, что он не помог мне вчера.
4. Жаль, что тема уже пройдена.
5. Жаль, что мы живем так далеко друг от друга.
6. Я бы предпочел, чтобы ты сам обо всем рассказал.
7. Как жаль, что ты не хочешь поговорить об этом.
8. Мне было жаль, что я не знал, как ему помочь.
9. Мне бы хотелось, чтобы ты не мешал мне читать.
10. Мне было жаль, что мы не понимаем друг друга.
11. Мне было жаль, что мы не поняли друг друга.
12. Мне жаль, что она не хочет помочь.
13. Мне жаль, что она слышит только себя.
14. Я бы предпочла, чтобы он не хвастался своими успехами.
15. Жаль, что я не умею петь.
16. Жаль, что все так быстро разошлись.
17. Как жаль, что никто не остался обсудить диссертацию.
18. Жаль, что экзамен мы сдаем зимой.
19. Жаль, что мы не сдаем экзамен зимой.
20. Как жаль, что ты сразу не пошел к врачу.
21. Жаль, что ты сразу начал принимать антибиотик.
22. Жаль, что ты не стал сразу принимать назначенный антибиотик.
23. Мне бы хотелось, чтобы ты сообщал мне о своем решении.
24. Я бы предпочел, чтобы она сразу тогда на вечеринке рассказала мне всю правду.
25. Мне бы хотелось, чтобы мы были друзьями.
26. Мне бы хотелось, чтобы мы никогда не расставались.
27. Мне бы хотелось, чтобы у меня был свой большой дом.
28. Мне бы хотелось, чтобы у меня не было проблем.
29. Мне бы хотелось, чтобы все мои друзья жили поблизости.
30. Мне бы хотелось, чтобы мы никогда больше не виделись.
31. Жаль, что он опоздал.
32. Ему было жаль, что она не опоздала.

33. Жаль, что я сейчас не с вами.
34. Зря я здесь сейчас с вами. Дома так много дел.
35. Напрасно вы не подписали бумаги вовремя.
36. Досадно, что мы заблудились именно в центре Парижа.
37. Жаль, что мы не говорим по-французски и не взяли карту города.
38. Зря я постирал белую майку с черными джинсами.
39. Жаль, что мои дети не со мной.
40. Хотелось бы, чтобы люди были более дружелюбными.
41. Хорошо бы, он позвонил мне вечером.
42. Напрасно я не принял это лекарство от головной боли.
43. Напрасно вы были так откровенны. Ведь он наш конкурент.
44. Жаль, что наш шеф не смог предупредить нас, что дело очень рискованное.
45. Я теперь жалею, что не послушал твоего совета.
46. Жаль, что я еще не могу прочесть эту книгу в оригинале.
47. Жаль, что у меня не было такой возможности 20 лет назад.
48. Хотелось бы, чтобы вы впредь были более внимательны.
49. Я сожалею, что вел себя так глупо.
50. Жаль, что этот перевод уже выполнен.

#### LESSON 4

#### SUBJUNCTIVE II IN ATTRIBUTIVE CLAUSES AFTER *IT'S TIME*, PREDICATIVE CLAUSES AFTER *AS IF*, AFTER THE EXPRESSION OF *DOUBT*

#### Exercise 1. Comment on the Oblique Moods.

**Model:** It is time I **made up** my mind.

**Made up** is used in its **non-perfect Subjunctive II** form. It is used in the **attributive** clause of a complex sentence after the expression **it's time...** in the main clause.

1. Well, well, young man, it's time you **settled down, had** a wife and nice kids.
2. 'I couldn't tell him.' – 'Would you rather I **had**'?'
3. 'So **be** it,' Ala said. 'We'll send out a clone in a small intergalactic ship.'
4. I wish I **had spent** the summer swimming or being a camp counselor.
5. It's time we **turned over** a new leaf in our life.
6. It's time you **snubbed** her close before she does someone a major damage.
7. 'God **damn** my wife. She is an excellent woman. I wish she **was** in hell.'
8. Isn't it time the children **switched off** TV and **went** to bed?
9. 'Now, **would** you **mind** telling what you did it with?'.
10. It's high time you **changed** your manner of dressing.
11. I wish someone **would give** me back all the time I've known Drum Casey.

12. Nina shook her head. ‘Don’t say that.’ – ‘Why not? It’s about time I **said** it.’ Dominic said.
13. ‘If you’ve told me the truth, the police will come get you tonight. If you haven’t, I will, and God **help** you.’
14. I **would rather not remember** this. Why was I such a fool? You should have stopped me.
15. It’s time you **earned** your own living.
16. We’d rather you **sang** your songs.

<b>STUDY</b>	<p><b>It is time</b> can be followed by the <b>infinitive</b>: <i>It’s time to start.</i></p> <p>or by a <b>for-to-infinitive construction</b>: It’s time <b>for us to go</b>.</p> <p>or by a <b>subject + Subjunctive II</b>: <i>It’s time we went.</i> <i>It’s time we were leaving.</i></p> <p>There is a slight difference in <b>meaning</b> between the forms. <b>it is time + infinitive</b> merely states that <b>the correct time has arrived</b>; <b>it is time + subject + Subjunctive II</b> implies that <b>it is a little late</b>. <b>high</b> can be added to <b>emphasize</b> this idea: <i>It’s high time we left.</i></p> <p><b>it is time + I/he/she/it can</b> be followed only by <b>was</b>: <i>It’s time I was going.</i></p>
--------------	--

## Exercise 2. Paraphrase the sentences using *It’s time*.

**Model:** You should forget about the issue. It’s not important.

It’s **high time/about time/time** you **forgot** about the issue. It’s not important.

1. The government should invest more in the environment.
2. Marina should think of her future.
3. John must consult a specialist.
4. The family ought to have a holiday.
5. We need to call an electrician.
6. You ought to feel responsible for your family.
7. Your hands are dirty. Wash them!
8. You have to think about the future.
9. Will you stop asking me provocative questions about my personal life?
10. I’m sorry. I have to say goodbye and leave.
11. Get up! You’ll be late for school!
12. Please hurry up and do your homework.
13. You should write to your uncle and apologize.

14. How can you watch that boring program?
15. The children should be in bed by now.
16. Will you get down to business, all of you!
17. You should take a break.

**Exercise 3. What would you say to someone in these situations using *It's time / it's about time / it's high time*?**

1. I keep failing my tests.
2. Nick is giving you a lift in his old sports car. There's a speed limit, and there's a police car behind you.
3. John and Julie have been engaged now for over ten years.
4. We haven't been out for an evening together for ages, have we?
5. I'm really sleepy.
6. It's very late. You should both really go now.
7. Some friends are going to visit you today. Your room is in a mess.
8. It's half past six already. I should be cooking the tea. Why are you sitting here doing nothing?
9. The neighbours are complaining. Our music is too loud.
10. My wife is waiting for me.
11. You are not very well. Perhaps, you should see a doctor.
12. You worry too much. Don't panic.
13. You and Daniel are meeting Rachel. You've both arrived, but she isn't there yet.
14. We have been discussing the project since morning.
15. Iona is leaving her bike outside the swimming-pool. You know it won't be safe if she leaves it unlocked.
16. There's an exam tomorrow. Neither you nor Rachel has done any work for it.

**Exercise 4. Translate into English.**

1. Всем давно пора понять, что назад пути нет.
2. Какой стыд, тебе давно пора выучить английский алфавит!
3. Шесть часов. А не пора ли пригласить гостей к столу?
4. Пора тебе перестать сплетничать о друзьях и коллегах.
5. Ты не думаешь, что тебе пора отремонтировать кухню?
6. Это плохая идея! Тебе пора понять, что я не приму ее.
7. Детям давно пора вернуться домой.
8. Тебе давно пора сказать ей, что ты о ней думаешь.
9. А не пора ли вам, дети, идти в школу?
10. Нам пора перестать волноваться и начать радоваться жизни.

**Exercise 5. Comment on Subjunctive II in predicative clauses, object clauses and after the expression of doubt.**

**Model:** It was as if she **were trying** to tell him something.

**Were trying** is used in its **non-perfect continuous Subjunctive II** form. It is used in the **predicative** clause of a complex sentence after the conjunction **as if**. The non-perfect form shows that the **unreal** action is **simultaneous** with the action shown by the finite verb **was**.

1. She looks as if she **had seen** a ghost.
2. Paul looked as if an idea **had just struck** him.
3. Samantha looks as if she **had fallen** in love.
4. 'Will you look at how his hair curls up? Oh, I wish mine **would do** that way.'
5. I doubted if they'd **had** time to plant listening devices in the room itself, but I still cupped my hand to the mouthpiece and lowered my voice.
6. Sindy felt as if she **had lived** a long, long life.
7. Grania looked as if she **were** about to ask him about Lizzie but changed her mind.
8. Adrian felt as if he **were** suddenly **transported** into a different world.
9. I wish I **knew** how to describe his smile.
10. He wondered if he **were** a mean man. He thought not, but then who really knew what they were like themselves?
11. Progress was slow and painful, but gradually, once I was on an effective dose of antidepressants, I felt as though I **were returning** to normal.
12. I doubt if this **were** the first time Mama had followed him down the street.
13. She felt as if a tsunami **had washed** over her and she **had come out** the other side.
14. Isn't it time we **put** an end to this horrible war?
15. 'I'd **rather be** alone,' she said.
16. I doubt if there **were** much competition.
17. They were looking as though someone **had died**.

**Exercise 6. Put the verbs in brackets into the correct form.**

1. While reading the novel I felt as if I also \_\_\_\_\_ (*live*) in those times and actually \_\_\_\_\_ (*take*) part in the events.
2. Lou is unsure if Gabe \_\_\_\_\_ (*want*) to be invited.
3. When you watch all those soaps on television, you feel as if people in them \_\_\_\_\_ (*think*) only about love and \_\_\_\_\_ (*not have*) any problems.
4. What a fuss and what a mess! It looks as if the last preparations for Christmas \_\_\_\_\_ (*make*).
5. Sometimes it seems to me as though the world \_\_\_\_\_ (*come*) to an end.
6. She looks as though her mouth \_\_\_\_\_ (*be*) full of lemon juice.
7. Nigel is searching for something. It looks as though he \_\_\_\_\_ (*lose*) the key.

8. It appears now as if Cora never \_\_\_\_\_ (*love*) Martin, as if it \_\_\_\_\_ (*be*) a bad dream.
9. In that small dress Miranda looked as if she \_\_\_\_\_ (*be*) a teenager.
10. Don't you think Maria sometimes looks as though she \_\_\_\_\_ (*wish*) she'd been born in another century?
11. Harry looked as if he \_\_\_\_\_ (*have*) the worst possible news. In fact, he'd failed his finals.
12. He didn't win a prize, but he looked as though he \_\_\_\_\_ (*win*) one.
13. He looks as though he never \_\_\_\_\_ (*get*) a square meal, but in fact his wife feeds him very well.
14. I was such a mess when I got home that I looked as if I \_\_\_\_\_ (*drag*) through a hedge backwards.
15. Wondering if they \_\_\_\_\_ (*mean*) it seriously, he preferred to hush up the real cause for his arrival.
16. It was such a bad case of flu that I honestly felt as if I \_\_\_\_\_ (*go*) to die.
17. The cheese looks as if rats \_\_\_\_\_ (*nibble*) it.
18. When I saw Corin on TV last night, it felt as if he \_\_\_\_\_ (*do*) what shows for ages. I can't believe this was his first one!

**Exercise 7. Complete the following sentences using Subjunctive II.**

1. The situation was as if...
2. His face looked as if...
3. It was as if...
4. The building looked as if...
5. ...as if he were a book they were reading.
6. They feel as if...
7. It appeared as though...
8. The pie smelt as though...
9. Why is Nell looking as if...
10. He felt as if...
11. She always looks as if...
12. It looks as though...
13. ...as if a *Pause* button had been pressed.
14. It seems as if...
15. She sounded as though...
16. It felt as if...

**Exercise 8. Translate into English.**

1. Я сомневаюсь, что в этой ситуации можно что-либо исправить.
2. У него было чувство, что его обманули. Хотя это было не так.
3. Сомневаюсь, что кто-нибудь знает ответ на этот вопрос.
4. Мне казалось, что я где-то слышала этот голос.

5. Что с вами? У вас такой вид, как будто вам нехорошо.
6. Вы выглядите так, как будто все лето провели на юге.
7. Было такое чувство, словно мы разговариваем с двумя совершенно разными людьми, живущими в одном человеке.
8. Хотя никого не было видно, у меня было такое чувство, как будто за мной наблюдали.
9. Казалось, он никому не верит.
10. Он выглядел так, словно вот-вот заплачет.
11. Кажется, словно мы в заброшенном городе.
12. Казалось, он был не против нашего предложения.
13. Мне кажется, что я знаю вас целую вечность.
14. Он выглядел так, словно услышал эту новость впервые.
15. У вас такой вид, как будто вы не можете решить, что делать дальше.
16. Ему казалось, что он никогда не уезжал из этого дома, что он жил здесь всегда.
17. Мы почувствовали, что кто-то приближается к нашему лагерю.
18. Он выглядел так, словно не пошевелился с тех пор, как я ушла.
19. Она была в отчаянии и предчувствовала: должно произойти что-то плохое.
20. Дом выглядел так, словно в нем не жили долгие годы.

### Exercise 9. Comment on the use the Oblique Moods.

1. His neat, pointed shoes looked as though he **had** never **worn** them before.
2. I doubted if it **were** possible.
3. I wish he **had** never **been sent out**.
4. I was standing in that patch of earth, wishing it **was** spring and time to plant petunias.
5. I wish you **would persuade** Uncle William to let me leave Paris, I am so sick of it.
6. I **would rather** you **chose** for yourself.
7. ***Come what may, I will not resign!***
8. His head felt as if someone **had attached** a lead weight to it during the night.
9. For a moment he wondered if he **were hallucinating**.
10. Blake had wished with all his heart that Jenny **would join** them.
11. I wish Kate **were** home.
12. You'd **better stay** inside while they're here, Harry.
13. 'Coffee?' – 'That **would be** very nice, thank you.'
14. It was in Godric's Hollow that, but for Voldemort, he **would have grown up** and **spent** every school holiday.
15. 'It's time I **joined** the modern world,' he told her, and he raised the phone to his eye again as if it **were** a Kodak.
16. God **save** the King!
17. She **would rather** I **had gone** to bed earlier.

**Exercise 10. For each of the sentences below, write a new sentence as similar as possible in meaning to the original sentence, but using the words given in brackets.**

**Model:** I would like to be rich. (*wish*)

I **wish** I were rich.

1. Please hurry up! (*wish*)
2. It's very late. We really ought to be leaving. (*time*)
3. It would be nice to know his opinion. (*wish*)
4. Please keep it a secret for the time being. (*rather*)
5. It's a pity that you're going away so soon. (*wish*)
6. Would you mind not smoking at table? (*rather*)
7. He really should find himself a regular job. (*time*)
8. My parents would prefer us to live in the country. (*rather*)
9. When is the weather going to improve? (*high time*)
10. Please stop making so much noise! (*wish*)

**Exercise 11. Translate into English using Subjunctive II.**

1. Жаль, что ты не сообщил ему эту новость раньше.
2. Зря ты не взял билеты на этот спектакль.
3. Пора нам перестать спорить и начать искать пути решения этой проблемы.
4. Как бы мне хотелось, чтобы ты не ссорился с ней.
5. У меня такое чувство, как будто он не все нам рассказывает.
6. Жаль, что я не могу вспомнить автора этого стихотворения.
7. Не пора ли ребенку ложиться спать?
8. Она чувствовала себя так, как будто прошла 10 км.
9. Как бы мне хотелось, чтобы ты перестал вести себя так глупо.
10. Мы ждем его уже целый час. Ему давно пора быть здесь.
11. Том ощущал себя так, словно повзрослел лет на пять.
12. Ей давно пора понять, что она взрослая и должна принимать решения самостоятельно.
13. Как жаль, что идет дождь. Дети так хотят пойти гулять.
14. Жаль, что я не прислушалась к маминому совету.
15. Энн выглядела так, словно была вполне довольна своей жизнью.
16. Жаль, что Дэйвид изменил свое решение.
17. Казалось, он совсем не в духе, чтобы отвечать на вопросы.
18. Я бы предпочел, чтобы мы провели отпуск у моря. Жаль, что мы остались дома.
19. Напрасно вы не подписали бумаги вовремя.
20. Я считаю, что нам давно пора перестать встречаться, хотя бы на некоторое время.
21. Ему казалось, что он встречал этого человека раньше.
22. Темнело. Нам пора было возвращаться.
23. Как бы хотелось, чтобы ты начала говорить мне правду!

24. Казалось, им больше ничего не угрожает.
25. Жаль, что мои дети не со мной и что они покинули меня, как только закончили школу.

**Exercise 12. Do you agree or disagree with the following statements? Discuss them in pairs or in small groups using Subjunctive II.**

1. I wish I had listened more to my parents.
2. It seems as if I had more free time now.
3. I'd rather it were summer all year around.
4. I wish I lived somewhere different.
5. I wish my family wouldn't interfere in my life so much.
6. It's time I spoke another language.
7. I'd rather people didn't use their cars so much.
8. I wish I had studied harder when I was at school.
9. I wish my neighbours wouldn't make so much noise.
10. I'd rather we could travel in time.
11. I wish I understood the meaning of life.
12. I wish I had a lot of children.

**Exercise 13. Put the write forms of the verbs in brackets.**

**HAVING A WONDERFUL TIME! WISH YOU WERE HERE!**

While trying to sail round the world in a small boat, Harry, Sandy and Joe were shipwrecked one night. 'I wish there **1**) \_\_\_\_\_ (*be*) an island nearby,' Harry said. By morning, they were washed up on to a desert island. For six months they lived on fish, nuts and fruit. One day, they saw a bottle on the shore. 'If only it **2**) \_\_\_\_\_ (*contain*) a note or something!' Sandy said. They opened it and a genie appeared. 'It's high time someone **3**) \_\_\_\_\_ (*open*) that bottle!' the genie gasped. 'I'm so grateful, I'll give you one wish each. You first,' the genie said, pointing to Harry. 'That's easy.' Harry said. 'I wish I **4**) \_\_\_\_\_ (*be*) with my family.' And (whoosh!) he disappeared. 'Me too,' Sandy said. 'If only I **5**) \_\_\_\_\_ (*can be*) in dear old Glasgow.' And (whoosh!) off he went. 'And you, sir?' the genie asked Joe. 'I wish I **6**) \_\_\_\_\_ (*have*) my friends back!' Joe said.

**Exercise 14. Translate into English.**

1. Как бы я хотел, чтобы твоя дочь была немножко похожа на тебя.
2. Я бы хотел, чтобы ты пришел к тому или иному решению.
3. Ему очень хотелось, чтобы этот вечер уже закончился.
4. Я иногда жалею, что ты решил написать эту книгу, Хью.
5. Я бы предпочел, чтобы у нас был настоящий сад.
6. О Боже, как я жалею, что сделал это!
7. Я бы очень хотел, чтобы Вилли изменил свое решение и не брался за изучение немецкого языка.
8. Жаль, что он не сходил на то собеседование.
9. Я бы хотел, чтобы ты снова начал писать стихи.

10. Я бы очень хотел, чтобы у большего числа наших коллег было твое чувство юмора, Джек.
11. Ей было жаль, что она не могла слышать, что говорилось внизу.
12. Как бы мне хотелось, чтобы он перестал писать мне.
13. Как жаль, что я не застал его дома.
14. Я пожалела, что рассказала им о себе.
15. Ему давно пора бы объяснить нам, что он задумал.
16. Когда я проснулся, то почувствовал, что самое время мне вызвать доктора.
17. В самом деле, нам пора пообедать.
18. Ему было сказано на людях, что пора бы научиться делать так, как велено.
19. Тебе давно пора выбросить эту старую мебель.
20. Как ты думаешь, не пора ли нам вернуться к гостям?

## B. THE SUPPOSITIONAL MOOD AND SUBJUNCTIVE I IN NOMINAL AND ATTRIBUTIVE CLAUSES

**Subjunctive I and the Suppositional Mood** can be used:

- 1) in **subject, object, predicative and attributive appositive** clauses if in the main clause a **modal meaning** is expressed (that of **order, recommendation, suggestion, supposition, desire, command**, etc.):

*It is **required** that all (**should**) **work hard*** (subject clause). *Необходимо, чтобы все усердно трудились.*

*Our **requirement** is that all (**should**) **work hard*** (predicative clause). *Мы требуем, чтобы все усердно трудились.*

*We **require** that all (**should**) **work hard*** (object clause). *Мы требуем, чтобы все усердно трудились.*

*Do you accept our **requirement** that all (**should**) **work hard**?* (attributive clause) *Вы согласны с нашим требованием, что все должны усердно трудиться?*

<b>STUDY</b>	<p><b>The Suppositional Mood</b> in nominal and attributive appositive clauses after modal meaning in the main clause is an alternative to a gerund or infinitive construction. <b>that... should</b> is more formal than a gerund or infinitive construction and usually implies less direct contact between the advisers / organizers etc. and the people who are to carry out the action.</p> <p><i>He ordered that Ann should go.</i> (He probably told someone else to tell her.)  <i>He ordered Ann to go.</i> (He probably told her herself.)</p> <p><i>He commanded that the army should advance.</i> (He was not necessarily with the army.)  <i>He commanded the army to advance.</i> (He probably was with the army.)</p> <p><i>He suggested that we should try homeopathic remedies.</i>  Compare with <i>He suggested (our) trying homeopathic remedies</i> which implies that he told us himself.</p>
--------------	---

- 2) only the Suppositional Mood (both **non-perfect** and **perfect**) is used in nominal and attributive appositive clauses if in the main clause a **personal reaction** to events is expressed (for instance, with words like **amazing, interesting, shocked, sorry, normal, natural, a shame**, etc.):

*It was **astonishing** that so short a break **should have destroyed** the habit of years* (subject clause). *Просто удивительно, что такой небольшой перерыв разрушил многолетнюю привычку.*

*I'm **surprised** that you **should want** him to stay in that house* (object clause). *Я удивлен, что ты хочешь, чтобы он остался в том доме.*

*The **funny** thing is you **should ask** that this morning, Roy.* (predicative clause). *Забавно, что ты хочешь спросить об этом сегодня утром, Рой.*

*A feeling of **anger** seized her that a letter from Gerald **should bring** her such pain* (attributive appositive clause). *То, что письмо Гарольда причиняет такую боль, по-настоящему разозлило ее.*

- 3) **the Suppositional Mood** (mostly **non-perfect**, though perfect is also possible) and **rarely Subjunctive I** are used in nominal and attributive appositive clauses after the expression of **fear** or **anxiety** in the main clause. The subordinate clause may be introduced by the conjunction **that** or the conjunction **lest** (typical of literary style). The **perfect** form of the Suppositional Mood is used when the anxiety concerns an action **prior** to the finite verb of the main clause:

*I was **terrified** lest they **should notice** me.* (object clause) *Я безумно нервничал, что они могут заметить меня.*

*She began to be **worried** lest he **should have met** with some accident.* (object clause). *Она начала **опасаться**, что он попал в аварию.*

*Our **fear** was **lest** we **should be** late* (predicative clause). *Мы **переживали**, что можем опоздать.*

*I have a **fear** that I **should lose** my friends.* (attributive appositive clause). *Я переживаю, что могу потерять друзей.*

The use of **Subjunctive I** is rather formal or literary in **British English**, **where it is used** in reported speech, very formal language (e.g. regulations, legal documents) and in poetry:

*We know not whether laws be right or whether laws be wrong... (Oscar Wilde)*

The use of **Subjunctive I** is less formal and more common in **American English**. **British English** speakers prefer to use **the Suppositional Mood** in most situations.

The summary of all types of nominal and attributive appositive clauses where we can find the oblique moods is presented in the table below.

	<b>Clauses</b>	<b>Example</b>	<b>In the main clause</b>
1	<b>Subject</b>	<i>It is necessary that all (should) work hard.</i>	modal meaning
		<i>It shocked me that he should be/have been so cruel.</i>	personal reaction
		<i>It frightens me that he should have been so cruel.</i>	fear
2	<b>Object</b>	<i>He suggested that I (should) come for her.</i>	modal meaning
		<i>I'm sorry that she should take/have taken care of that.</i>	personal reaction
		<i>We feared lest he (should) come.</i>	fear
		<i>I wish I were/had been at home.</i>	after <b>wish</b>
		<i>I would rather you called/had called him.</i>	after <b>would rather</b>
3	<b>Predicative</b>	<i>Our requirement is that all (should) work hard.</i>	modal meaning
		<i>The funny thing is you should ask that this morning, Roy.</i>	personal reaction
		<i>His fear was lest he (should) be neglected.</i>	fear
		<i>It looks as if (as though) she didn't like me.</i>	after <b>as if/as though</b>
4	<b>Attributive</b>	<i>It's high time you were back home.</i>	after <b>it's (high) time</b>
5	<b>Attributive Appositive</b>	<i>Do you accept our requirement that all should work hard?</i>	modal meaning
		<i>His surprise that you should want him to stay in that house was genuine.</i>	personal reaction
		<i>I have a fear that I (should) lose my friends.</i>	fear

## LESSON 5

### THE SUPPOSITIONAL MOOD IN NOMINAL AND ATTRIBUTIVE CLAUSES AFTER MODAL MEANING IN THE MAIN CLAUSE

**Exercise 1. Supply Subjunctive I or the Suppositional Mood in these sentences.**

1. It's urgent that we \_\_\_\_\_ (*send*) the information now.
2. It will be desirable that we \_\_\_\_\_ (*have*) a heart-to-heart talk.
3. Marion proposed that we \_\_\_\_\_ (*buy*) a gift for Jim who would soon be leaving the firm.
4. The travel agent recommended that we \_\_\_\_\_ (*avoid*) driving abroad during the holidays.
5. I suggest that he \_\_\_\_\_ (*not raise*) this matter during the meeting.
6. All I ask is that they \_\_\_\_\_ (*not break*) the rules.
7. What does he advise she \_\_\_\_\_ (*do*)?
8. I consider it vitally important that Mr. Micawber \_\_\_\_\_ (*feel*) his position.

9. It's essential that she \_\_\_\_\_ (*return*) home now.
10. It's vital that he \_\_\_\_\_ (*inform*).
11. I'm eager that she \_\_\_\_\_ (*be*) present at the meeting.
12. It's no good demanding that we \_\_\_\_\_ (*improve*) our performance. We're doing our best.
13. I would only request that you \_\_\_\_\_ (*take*) good care of this flat while you're living in it.
14. Her solicitor insisted that she \_\_\_\_\_ (*not delay*) in signing the contract.
15. I suggest we \_\_\_\_\_ (*take*) a taxi if we want to get to the meeting on time.
16. He asks that he \_\_\_\_\_ (*be*) allowed to visit his children once a week.
17. Call Rachel's mother and suggest she \_\_\_\_\_ (*not come*) in today.
18. 'So I suggest you \_\_\_\_\_ (*get out*) of this house and \_\_\_\_\_ (*take*) your accusations with you.'

**Exercise 2. Paraphrase the following sentences so as to use the Suppositional Mood or Subjunctive I.**

1. 'Drink lots of water and have three light meals a day,' the doctor suggested.  
The doctor suggested \_\_\_\_\_ .
2. 'Submit the paper on Monday at the latest,' the teacher insisted.  
The teacher insisted \_\_\_\_\_ .
3. 'How about checking the Stockwood reservoir?' Sasha suggests.  
Sasha suggests \_\_\_\_\_ .
4. 'We should sell the tickets at 3 pounds each,' Marie proposed.  
Marie proposed \_\_\_\_\_ .
5. 'We must take the necessary steps to reduce global warming now!' the scientist recommended.  
The scientist recommended \_\_\_\_\_ .
6. 'Bring some bleach and a good scrubbing brush,' Jane asked Tom.  
Jane suggested \_\_\_\_\_ .
7. 'And how about we start with you giving me back my journal?' he suggested.  
He suggested \_\_\_\_\_ .
8. 'Why don't you pick up the pace a bit?' we suggested.  
We suggested \_\_\_\_\_ .
9. 'We've got to go,' I insist.  
I insist \_\_\_\_\_ .
10. 'Give us your Gift,' Nick demands. 'That would be sufficient.'  
Nick demands \_\_\_\_\_ .
11. 'You should take things easier these days,' the doctor said.  
The doctor ordered \_\_\_\_\_ .
12. 'Spend the night here!' he insisted.  
He insisted \_\_\_\_\_ .

13. 'You should get a thermometer, and a few grapes, and some bread,'  
I suggested.  
I suggested \_\_\_\_\_ .
14. 'Take the picture!' she insisted.  
She insisted \_\_\_\_\_ .
15. 'You need to go to bed,' she said.  
She suggested \_\_\_\_\_ .
16. 'Let's all go and eat ices in the park.' I proposed.  
I proposed \_\_\_\_\_ .
17. 'You should go home for a while,' I suggested.  
I suggested \_\_\_\_\_ .
18. Instead she had showered, made herself a strong coffee, collected some  
of Nat's Eagles and Snow Patrol CDs and his wash things, as the nurse had  
suggested, and driven back.  
The nurse suggested \_\_\_\_\_ .

### Exercise 3. Using Subjunctive I in commands.

- The students are divided into two teams.
- The first student from Team 1 draws a slip of paper with an order on it. The student then puts that order into a subjunctive sentence. The students are not to repeat the same verb used by their classmates, but to use a variety: *demand, tell, order, ask*, etc.

**Example: Paper:** Teacher to student: 'Shut the door.'

**Student:** The teacher **demanded** that the student **shut** the door.

- If the student answers correctly, he/she scores a point for his/her team. Then the other team takes a turn.
- Repeat until all orders have been put into the subjunctive. The team with the most points wins.

Mother to child: 'Be careful!'	Teacher to student: 'Stay after class.'	Teacher to student: 'Study for the test.'
Mother to son: 'Be home by 5:00.'	Friend to friend: 'Drive more carefully.'	Father to child: 'Eat your vegetables.'
Mother to daughter: 'Get your hair cut.'	Friend to friend: 'Be here in an hour.'	Father to son: 'Don't spend all your money.'
Museum official to visitor: 'Don't touch that!'	Sister to sister: 'Don't tell anyone my secret.'	Test official to worker: 'Don't admit anyone after 1 P.M.'
Teacher to student: 'Take the Institutional TOEFL.'	Mother to child: 'Clean up your mess.'	Friend to friend: 'Buy a new car.'
Friend to friend: 'Tell me the truth.'	Father to child: 'Don't lie to me!'	Advisor to student: 'Apply to colleges early.'

#### Exercise 4. Question draw.

1. The students are divided into two teams.
2. The first student from Team 1 draws a slip of paper with a question on it and reads it to the first student on Team 2. That student answers the question, using Subjunctive I in a subject clause.

**Example: Question:** What is it necessary that a person wear to class?

**Answer:** It is **necessary** that a person **wear** shoes to class.

3. If the student answers correctly, he/she scores a point for his/her team. Then a student from the other team takes a turn.
4. Repeat until all questions have been chosen. The team with the most points wins.

What have your parents insisted that you do?	What do you suggest your brother do?	What is it important that every student do?
What is it vital that a doctor do?	What do you propose that we do after class?	What does the teacher recommend that you do?
What have you asked that your parents do?	What is it necessary that a pilot have?	What do you advise that your friend do?
What has a doctor suggested that you take?	What has someone requested that you do?	What is it necessary that a teacher do?
What is it vital that the government do to decrease crime?	What do you request that your friends call you?	What is it essential that a person do before going to a foreign country?
What is it imperative that a driver do when he/she hears a fire engine coming?	What have you asked that your boyfriend/girlfriend/spouse do?	What meal is it most important that a person eat?

#### Exercise 5. Use your own idea to complete the sentences.

1. Mr. Adams insists that we \_\_\_\_\_ careful in our writing.
2. They requested that we \_\_\_\_\_ after midnight.
3. She demanded that I \_\_\_\_\_ her the truth.
4. I recommended that \_\_\_\_\_ to the head of the department.
5. I suggest that everyone \_\_\_\_\_ a letter to the governor.
6. It is essential that I \_\_\_\_\_ you tomorrow.
7. I'm eager that you \_\_\_\_\_ the rules.
8. It is important that he \_\_\_\_\_ the director of the English program.
9. It is necessary that everyone \_\_\_\_\_ here on time.
10. Don recommended that you \_\_\_\_\_ the committee.
11. I suggested we \_\_\_\_\_ again.
12. He insisted that all of us \_\_\_\_\_ for a while.

13. She proposed that \_\_\_\_\_ the next day.
14. It's vital that he \_\_\_\_\_ at the meeting.
15. It's no good asking that he \_\_\_\_\_ home.
16. What I advise is that she \_\_\_\_\_ the contract.

**Exercise 6. Change the following sentences so as to use nominal clauses of every given type.**

**Model:** I suggest giving our own examples.

- a) (**subject clause**) It is suggested **that we (should) give our own examples.**  
Or: **That we give our own examples** is my suggestion.
- b) (**predicative clause**) My suggestion is **that we give our own examples.**
- c) (**object clause**) I suggest **that we give our own examples.**
- d) (**attributive appositive clause**) I think there are no objections to my suggestion **that we give our own examples.**

1. The doctor **recommended** to have the sick room aired every other hour.
2. She **insisted** on sitting close to me.
3. My **advice** is for you to get thoroughly acquainted with the literature on the subject.
4. He **insisted** on being given a chance to prove his point of view.
5. They approached us with the **request** for the goods to be dispatched at once.
6. The **order** was for the messages to be delivered to the headquarters every six hours.
7. It is **necessary** for you to hand in an application not later than in a week.
8. I **suggest** our starting off as soon as possible.
9. It is very **important** for you to see the purpose of it.
10. Jim **insisted** on me trying this car.
11. He **suggested** letting him clear the house of its present furniture.
12. 'Ask them to draw the curtain on that window there,' Weddel said.
13. 'But it is more **important** to rest,' he told himself.
14. It was **necessary** for her to hear the truth.
15. You'd better take the **advice** and take your ring and go on back to Nebraska or Kansas or wherever it is.
16. So all **necessary** now is for you to put your foot down.
17. What I suggest is we **get** a dive boat sorted for first light in the morning.

**Exercise 7. Complete the following sentences using Subjunctive I or the Suppositional Mood.**

**a) in subject clauses:**

1. It is essential (that)...
2. It advisable (that)....?
3. It is imperative (that)...
4. It is important (that)...
5. It is desirable (that)...
6. It is recommended (that)...
7. It is urgent (that)...
8. It is vital (that)...
9. It is crucial (that)...
10. It was necessary (that)...
11. It is required (that)...

**b) in predicative clauses:**

1. The order was... 2. His suggestion is... 3. My advice is... 4. The students' demands were... 5. What I suggest is... 6. Her desire was... 7. Father's ambition was...

**c) in object clauses:**

1. We propose that... 2. The doctor advised that... 3. I insist that... 4. The chief ordered that... 5. The teacher recommended that... 6. The guide suggested that... 7. The manager demanded that... 8. The teacher asked that... 9. Mum urged that... 10. We all decided that... 11. They ruled that... 12. His brother arranged that... 13. The manager was eager that... 14. The board of directors recommended that... 15. The judge orders that... 16. He requested that...

**d) in attributive appositive clauses:**

1. He acted under the instruction... 2. He voiced the common desire of us all... 3. She declared her intention... 4. She couldn't wave off the demand... 5. I announced his will... 6. He was given the command... 7. Her desire ... seems sincere. 8. He declared his intention... 9. Our petition ... should be taken into consideration. 10. We have made a request that... 11. Have you seen my suggestion that...?

**Exercise 8. Comment on the use of the Oblique Moods.**

**Model:** It is necessary that all **work** hard.

**Work** is used in its **Subjunctive I** form. It is used in the **subject** clause of a complex sentence. In the main clause a **modal meaning** is expressed.

1. Isn't it time we **put** an end to this horrible war?
2. 'What do you propose I **do**?'
3. Next on the list was the requirement that she **should have** a terminal illness.
4. Ian's parents have a place there and Ian suggested I **join** them.
5. He suggested we **encourage** people to walk, cycle and generally do more exercise.
6. It looked as though he **were** amused at everything Jane said.
7. Philip suggested that they **should dine** together and go to a music hall.
8. The early post brought a letter from Edward, repeating his wish that she **should return** to Court Leys.
9. Is it essential that we **be** there?
10. The boss insisted that Sam **not be** at the meeting.
11. The company asked that employees **not accept** personal phone calls during business hours.
12. I suggest that you **not take** the job without renegotiating the salary.
13. It is crucial that you **be** there before Tom arrives.
14. It is important she **attend** the meeting.
15. It's high time you **changed** your manner of talking to them.

16. It is recommended that he **take** a gallon of water with him if he wants to hike to the bottom of the Grand Canyon.
17. It's very necessary that there **should be** some understanding between us.
18. It is vital that you **be** truthful about what happened.
19. 'Can I suggest you all **take** some time to think things over before you reach any decisions?'

### **Exercise 9. Translate the sentences using Subjunctive I or the Suppositional Mood.**

#### **A. Subject and attributive appositive clauses**

1. В этом мире совершенно необходимо, чтобы мы помогли друг другу.
2. Как вы думаете, необходимо ли, чтобы пациент знал, что написано в его медицинской карте (a medical record)?
3. Его мечте о том, что они помирятся, так и не суждено было осуществиться.
4. Было очень важно, чтобы эта информация содержалась в тайне.
5. Его просьбу о том, чтобы это осталось тайной, не услышали.
6. Было крайне необходимо, чтобы пациент принимал все лекарства, назначенные врачом.
7. Родственникам надо считаться с пожеланием пациента не сообщать свой диагноз.
8. Было принято решение о том, что ему необходимо уехать из страны.
9. У меня есть предложение пойти в театр.
10. Очень важно, чтобы каждый студент выполнил это задание самостоятельно.
11. Желательно, чтобы он выступил с докладом на конференции.
12. Необходимо, чтобы каждый студент посещал все лекции.

#### **B. Predicative and object clauses**

1. Почему ты настаиваешь на том, что он должен сдавать экзамены досрочно?
2. Мой совет: ему нужно бросить курить.
3. Порядок таков, что каждый участник должен зарегистрироваться.
4. Том настаивает на том, чтобы Энн пошла на вечеринку.
5. Рекомендация врача заключалась в том, что Том должен придерживаться щадящей диеты.
6. Я предлагаю организовать пикник в воскресенье.
7. Я предлагаю, чтобы мы продолжили переговоры.
8. Партнеры настаивали на том, чтобы Фрэнк организовал встречу.
9. Я настаиваю на том, чтобы Том взял деньги.
10. Командир дал указание, чтобы войска отступали.
11. Я требую, чтобы этот вопрос был решен открытым голосованием.
12. Его требование заключается в том, что каждый пациент должен быть ознакомлен со всеми возможными осложнениями операции.

**LESSON 6**  
**THE SUPPOSITIONAL MOOD IN NOMINAL AND ATTRIBUTIVE CLAUSES**  
**AFTER FEAR AND EMOTION IN THE MAIN CLAUSE**

**Exercise 1. Supply Subjunctive I or the Suppositional Mood in these sentences.**

1. She was afraid lest she \_\_\_\_\_ (*lose*) her gloves.
2. She was anxious lest the children \_\_\_\_\_ (*forget*) to take the key.
3. Her fear was lest they \_\_\_\_\_ (*misinterpret*) her words.
4. But how strange it was that the creative instinct \_\_\_\_\_ (*seize*) upon this dull stockbroker.
5. I fear lest early frosts \_\_\_\_\_ (*damage*) the apple-trees.
6. It's annoying that the child \_\_\_\_\_ (*be*) naughty.
7. Heaven forbid that I \_\_\_\_\_ (*grudge*) my native country any portion of the wealth that may be accumulated by our descendants!
8. She feared lest she \_\_\_\_\_ (*invite*) to this party.
9. I think it's an interesting fact that she \_\_\_\_\_ (*come*) from Estonia.
10. My fear is lest he \_\_\_\_\_ (*mix*) up everything.
11. It was cruel that his extreme unhappiness \_\_\_\_\_ (*have*) in it something of buffoonery.
12. I worry lest he \_\_\_\_\_ (*fall*) ill. He is running a temperature.
13. She was uneasy lest she \_\_\_\_\_ (*disturb*) her neighbours.
14. It was curious that she \_\_\_\_\_ (*not wish*) to see him.
15. She suggested we all \_\_\_\_\_ (*come*) in the house.
16. I had a panic of fear lest they \_\_\_\_\_ (*see*) me.
17. Howard suggested that we \_\_\_\_\_ (*go out*) for dinner and \_\_\_\_\_ (*dance*) somewhere.
18. It chilled me a little that she \_\_\_\_\_ (*be*) concerned with gossip.
19. It is hard that a man's exterior \_\_\_\_\_ (*tally*) so little sometimes with his soul.
20. All set. You will have to go inside. They insisted it \_\_\_\_\_ (*be*) inside, so everybody that sees it will know it is the courthouse.

**Exercise 2. Transform the sentences, using the words given in brackets.**

1. I wanted him to take legal advice. (*suggest*)
2. The new trainer wants to hand in his notice already? I just don't believe it. (*incredible*)
3. Factory inspectors wanted new safety rules to be introduced. (*recommend*)
4. Some students tend to feel a little homesick in there first week there. I can understand that. (*normal*)
5. The judge wanted the court to adjourn for lunch. (*order*)
6. The Speaker wanted the MP to withdraw his remark. (*rule*)
7. Children must be taught the difference between right and wrong. I believe that strongly. (*important*)

8. The Colonel wanted his troops to attack at dawn. (*decide*)
9. Why has he complained now, right at the end of his course? I just can't work it out. (*odd*)
10. The leader of the expedition wanted them to make a further attempt to reach the summit while the weather held. (*propose*)
11. I wonder why she left without saying anything. I'd really like to know. (*bewildering*)
12. Teachers wanted more nursery schools to be set up. (*advocate*)
13. The magistrate wanted the man to be released. (*direct*)
14. The police wanted members of the public not to approach the two men but to report to the nearest police station. (*give instructions*)
15. Shareholders wanted the Board to give more detailed information about profits. (*demand*)
16. The employers wanted the men to return to work so that negotiations could begin. (*urge*)
17. 'Don't let your feelings run away with you, will you?' said the youth club leader. (*warn*)
18. 'We simply must go to the police about this latest attack,' said a bystander. (*insist*)

**Exercise 3. Rewrite the following sentences with a suitable *that*-clause.**

1. How odd! Both our wives have the same name.
2. The manufacturer recommends heating the element for five minutes before use.
3. The commanding officer gave the order for them to go forward.
4. Quite naturally, you are upset about what's happened.
5. My lawyer considers it extremely inadvisable for me to appear in person.
6. They have asked for him to be released on bail pending an appeal.
7. It's incredible! We've been living in the same street for two years and have never got to know each other.
8. Their decision to promote him is a good one.
9. It's essential that we are kept fully informed of any developments.
10. The UN's insistence that he accepts the terms of the cease-fire seemed inflexible.
11. She insisted that I didn't talk to anyone else about what I saw.
12. You've missed the one talk that was worth hearing. What's a pity!
13. That's curious! He asked you to come rather than me.
14. May I suggest getting a second opinion on the matter?
15. It's typical of him. He expects everyone else to do all the work.
16. We really must insist on the officer concerned responding to our demands.
17. It is essential for Arthur to complete the research before the end of the year.
18. The committee have requested his presence at the meeting.

19. We deem it imperative for our client to have sight of all the relevant documents.
20. Isn't it odd! They are getting married, after all they've said about marriage.
21. You have to pay so much tax. It's crazy!
22. The opposition are demanding the truth from the minister.
23. Look over the agreement before you sign it. This is essential.
24. Read the instructions carefully before you start answering the questions. This is important.
25. How splendid! You'll be coming to live near us.
26. We proposed the Council's publication of the information without delay.
27. You've bought the house we once thought of buying ourselves. How interesting!
28. Emergency supplies must reach the area quickly. This is vital.

**Exercise 4. Write sentences using the model *It is + adjective + subject clause*.**

1. Advisable / children / see / and not hear  
*It is advisable that children (should) be seen and not heard.*
2. necessary / time / take / to do a job right
3. advisable / you / not criticize / others because you have faults, too
4. essential / things / do / in the right order
5. advisable / problems / take care of / before they get worse
6. important / you not be upset / over what already happened
7. desirable / a person / stick with what he or she already has rather than go after other things
8. vital / a person / enjoy life / as well as / work
9. essential / a person / get / an early start to beat the competition
10. necessary / precautions / take / before there is trouble

**Exercise 5. Rewrite the following groups of sentences, using *should* where it is appropriate.**

1. Do you know what Denis's idea is? It is that we go into business with him in the hardware trade. I've told him it's essential for us to know exactly the extent of our commitment before we make up our mind. It's obviously better for us to be extremely cautious at this stage than to regret it later.
2. 'Our stockbroker recommends that we buy as many Worthright shares as we can afford.' 'Really? It's odd that he has suddenly changed his mind about them.' 'Why is it odd? It's only right for a stockbroker to change his mind if the market itself changes. It seems that you mistrust his motives. I'm sure he intends us to make money, not lose it.'
3. 'I'm sorry there was no one at the airport to meet you. I told Denis it was essential for him to be there by nine o'clock in case the plane was early.' 'Don't worry. I naturally thought it strange there was no one there to meet me. But why should you take the blame?'

4. 'I really don't see why some people get all the luck and others none at all. Why, after all, did Helen get the job when it ought to have been Sheila?' The simple reason is that Helen's mother insisted on her daughter getting it. And Helen's mother is a woman of considerate influence.'

**Exercise 6. Complete the following sentences using Subjunctive I or the Suppositional Mood.**

**a) in subject clauses after the expression of personal reaction:**

1. It's ironic (that)... 2. Is it funny (that)...? 3. It was unbelievable (that)...  
4. Isn't it strange (that)...? 5. It's rather odd (that)... 6. It's so disappointing (that)...  
7. It's surprising (that)... 8. It is best (that)... 9. It is a bad idea(that)...

**b) in object clauses after the expression of fear:**

1. We fear lest... 2 I'm afraid lest... 3. She left the room on tiptoe fearing lest...  
4. He was anxious lest... 5. Barbara was afraid that... 6. He was horribly worried that...

**c) in predicative clauses after the expression of fear:**

1. The fear was... 2. His anxiety is... 3. My apprehension is... 4. Her fear was lest...  
5. The sheer terror was...

**d) in attributive appositive clauses after the expression of fear or personal reaction:**

1. She was seized with a panic of fear lest... 2. There was no end to their surprise...  
3. He voiced the common fear of us all... 4. She couldn't wave off the fear...  
5. I expressed my great concern... 6. They did it for fear that...

**Exercise 7. Comment on the use of the Oblique Moods.**

**Model:** His fear was lest he **should be seen**.

**Should be seen** is used in the **Suppositional Mood** in its **non-perfect passive** form. It is used in the predicative clause of a complex sentence. In the main clause fear is expressed. The **non-perfect** form shows **simultaneity** with the finite verb **was**.

1. She feared lest her obvious desire for this invitation **should be ignored**.
2. My fear lest he **should give** away my secret was great.
3. It was curious that she **should not wish** to see him.
4. It was high time he **went** to school.
5. It's almost about time we **went out** to dinner.
6. It's bad enough that I **should have lost** all real contact with the children.
7. His only anxiety was lest he **should be transferred** before he had finished a road he was building.
8. 'Heaven **forbid** that we **should invest** in something not an absolute certainty,' he added with a dramatic shudder.
9. He suggested that she **be** more vocal in the next meeting.

10. It's time we **turned** over a new leaf in our life.
11. I think, now, how odd it was that, when he went from London to Canterbury, he **should have talked** as if he **were going** to the farthest limits of the earth.
12. It's time you **earned** your own living.
13. I am anxious you **should be** early in the busy world and on the world's track.
14. Dr. Smith asked that Mark **submit** his research paper before the end of the month.
15. Donna requested Frank **come** to the party.
16. 'How strange that you **should say** that!' I answered.
17. The teacher insists that her students **be** on time.
18. It was natural that I **should take chances**.
19. How strange that you **should know** him!

### Exercise 8. Translate the sentences using Subjunctive I or the Suppositional Mood.

1. Боюсь, как бы с детьми что-нибудь не случилось.
2. Все опасались, что с похищенными детьми будут плохо обращаться.
3. Зимой они опасались, как бы их дачу не ограбили.
4. Требование полиции, чтобы все покинули здание, не было выполнено.
5. Она боялась, что ее не поймут.
6. Просто невероятно, что мы не можем больше сесть и спокойно все обсудить.
7. Подозрительно, что они не отказались поехать со всеми.
8. Вполне естественно, что он боится операции. Случай серьезный.
9. Удивительно, что они решили пожениться. Они знакомы всего три дня.
10. Очень странно, что она отказывается от такой работы.
11. Очень грустно, что он не захотел обратиться к нам за помощью.
12. Сомнительно, что он ее критиковал. Он же с ума по ней сходит.
13. Барбара опасалась, что он может прочесть ее мысли.
14. Печально, что хороший студент не знает таких простых вещей.
15. Удивительно, что вы помните мое имя!
16. Алан очень боялся, что сделал много ошибок в сочинении.
17. Его идея состоит в том, чтобы мы подумали об этом вместе.
18. Странно, что ребенок опять заснул. Ведь он проснулся всего лишь полчаса назад.
19. Боюсь, чтобы она не узнала мое лицо.
20. Водитель гнал машину на предельной скорости из-за боязни, что может опоздать на самолет.
21. Мы настаиваем на том, чтобы вы позвонили ему.
22. Странно, чтобы он так хотел пойти туда.
23. Я считаю необходимым обсудить все детали контракта сегодня же.
24. Все согласились, что требование преподавателя, чтобы все переводы выполнялись в письменном виде, справедливо.

## LESSON 7

### THE OBLIQUE MOODS IN NOMINAL AND ATTRIBUTIVE CLAUSES. REVISION

#### Exercise 1. Supply the correct forms of the verbs in brackets.

##### A.

1. I suggest that Frank \_\_\_\_\_ (*read*) the directions carefully before assembling the bicycle. He doesn't want the wheels to fall off while he is riding down a hill.
2. I'd sooner you \_\_\_\_\_ (*do*) something with your time rather than \_\_\_\_\_ (*sit*) around all day.
3. I am not going to sit here and let her insult me. I demand that she immediately \_\_\_\_\_ (*apologize*) for what she just said.
4. Judy asked that we \_\_\_\_\_ (*attend*) her graduation ceremony next week.
5. He didn't win a prize. But he looked as though he \_\_\_\_\_ (*win*) one.
6. It was about time you \_\_\_\_\_ (*go*) on a holiday.
7. It's a little difficult to find the restaurant. I propose that we all \_\_\_\_\_ (*drive*) together so that nobody gets lost along the way.
8. The nutritionist recommended that Sally \_\_\_\_\_ (*reduce*) her daily fat intake.
9. I'd rather you \_\_\_\_\_ (*not drive*) so fast, Pat.
10. The sign at the pool recommended that you \_\_\_\_\_ (*not swim*) after eating a large meal.
11. It is necessary that a life guard \_\_\_\_\_ (*monitor*) the swimming pool while the children are taking their swimming lessons.
12. I wish I \_\_\_\_\_ (*be*) as good as you at mathematics.
13. It's a shame you missed the party; I would rather you \_\_\_\_\_ (*be*) there.
14. The sun is scorching today. I suggest you \_\_\_\_\_ (*put*) on sunblock immediately before you get a sun burn.
15. It seemed as if he \_\_\_\_\_ (*not understand*) the question.
16. John insists that Sarah \_\_\_\_\_ (*invite*) to the wedding; otherwise he will not attend.
17. That man has brought us nothing but trouble. I wish I never \_\_\_\_\_ (*set*) eyes on him.
18. 'Can I take your best umbrella?' 'I'd rather you \_\_\_\_\_ (*take*) the other one.'
19. I wish I \_\_\_\_\_ (*not try*) to repair it. I only made it worse.
20. It is imperative that the world \_\_\_\_\_ (*work*) towards a solution to global warming before the weather patterns of the world are disrupted irreparably.
21. 'I said 'Sunday'.' 'I wish you \_\_\_\_\_ (*not say*) Sunday. We'll never be ready by then.'
22. This time he drained half the glass in a gulp, and she wondered if that \_\_\_\_\_ (*be*) wise.
23. My parents require that I \_\_\_\_\_ (*be*) early back home.

24. I'd rather you \_\_\_\_\_ (*not mention*) this to anyone until next week.
25. She recommended that we \_\_\_\_\_ (*keep*) quiet during the lesson.
26. It is important that Mrs Shaw \_\_\_\_\_ (*finish*) the project by the end of the month.

**B.**

1. It's just struck midnight. It's high time we \_\_\_\_\_ (*leave*).
2. Father: I've supported you all through university. Now I think it's time you \_\_\_\_\_ (*begin*) to support yourself.
3. I wish I \_\_\_\_\_ (*know*) what is wrong with my car.
4. The doctor's suggestion is that they \_\_\_\_\_ (*exercise*) regularly and \_\_\_\_\_ (*avoid*) fatty foods.
5. His mother would rather he \_\_\_\_\_ (*work*) closer to home than he does.
6. She begged us that we never \_\_\_\_\_ (*reveal*) her secret.
7. I wish I \_\_\_\_\_ (*ask*) the fishmonger to clean these fish. (*I'm sorry I didn't ask him.*)
8. It was such a bad case of flu that I honestly felt as if I \_\_\_\_\_ (*go*) to die.
9. I wish Jim \_\_\_\_\_ (*not move*) to London last year as I hardly see him now.
10. It is required that one \_\_\_\_\_ (*proceed*) with caution.
11. I hate driving. I'd much rather you \_\_\_\_\_ (*drive*).
12. I wish transistor radios never \_\_\_\_\_ (*invent*).
13. It is vital that young people \_\_\_\_\_ (*be*) careful when drive a car at night.
14. 'I'll pay you by cheque monthly.' 'I'd rather you \_\_\_\_\_ (*pay*) me cash weekly.'
15. It's high time they \_\_\_\_\_ (*mend*) this road.
16. The manager urged his colleagues that they \_\_\_\_\_ (*not smoke*) at work.
17. It's important that she \_\_\_\_\_ (*remember*) to take her medicine twice a day.
18. Mrs Finkelstein demanded that the heater \_\_\_\_\_ (*repair*) immediately. Her apartment was freezing.
19. 'When someone says something to me, I translate it into French, and then I think of a reply in French, and then translate it into English and say it.' 'It's high time you \_\_\_\_\_ (*stop*) doing all this translation and \_\_\_\_\_ (*start*) thinking in English.'
20. I wish I \_\_\_\_\_ (*invite*) more people to my fancy dress party last week.
21. It's vital that the United States \_\_\_\_\_ (*focus*) on improving its public education system. What we do now will affect our country for generations to come.
22. It's time we \_\_\_\_\_ (*do*) something to stop road accidents.
23. The monk insisted that the tourists \_\_\_\_\_ (*not enter*) the temple until they had took off their shoes.
24. Was it really necessary that I \_\_\_\_\_ (*sit*) there watching you the entire time you were rehearsing for the play? It was really boring watching you repeat the scenes over and over again.
25. 'I'd like to get a job.' – 'I'd much rather you \_\_\_\_\_ (*stay*) at home and \_\_\_\_\_ (*look*) after the house.'

26. I wish you \_\_\_\_\_ (*not give*) him my phone number. (*I'm sorry you gave it to him.*)
27. Don't you think Maria sometimes looks as though she \_\_\_\_\_ (*wish*) she'd been born in another century?

**Exercise 2. In pairs, role play the following situations using Subjunctive II in object clauses.**

**Neighbour A**

You're fed up with your neighbours' behavior. You wish they **would**:  
 turn their TV down;  
 keep their dogs out of your back garden;  
 stop parking in front of your gate.  
 You also wish they **would stop** complaining about you: you don't see why *you* should do anything to change *your* lifestyle.

**Neighbour B**

You're fed up with your neighbours' behavior. You wish they **would**:  
 prevent their teenagers from having late night parties;  
 chop down the tree in the garden;  
 pick their baby up when he cries instead of letting him scream.  
 You also wish they **would stop** complaining about you: you don't see why *you* should do anything to change *your* lifestyle.

**Exercise 3. Paraphrase the following sentences using the Oblique Moods:**

1. Taking the later flight would be preferable for me. – *I'd sooner take the later flight.*
2. You must tell us the whole truth. *It is essential...*
3. You look awful. Have you been unwell? *You look as if...*
4. She told her mother everything! *I wish she...*
5. Sandra sent us her greetings. Isn't it amazing? *We were surprised that...*
6. We really should go now. *It's time...*
7. I am so sorry Fred is away. *If only...*
8. Please don't wipe your feet on the carpets. *I'd sooner you...*
9. We really ought to pay the bill now. *It's time we...*
10. I'd love to be able to play the piano. *I wish...*
11. 'Put him in a cell!' commanded the officer. *His order was that...*
12. I am sitting in the office! *I wish...*
13. If they had the choice, I think they'd prefer us to go with them. *They would rather...*
14. What a pity it rained last night. *I wish...*
15. She isn't a member of the club, but she acts like someone who is. *She looks as though...*

16. I didn't meet him yesterday! *If only...*
17. Her constant criticism of me really gets on my nerves. *I wish...*
18. You should give your parents a call, they must be getting worried by now. *It's about time...*
19. I regret not going to University when I was younger. *Oh that...*
20. 'Repeat your story,' the Judge told me. *The Judge requested that...*
21. Please don't let the dog sit in front of the car. *I wish...*
22. She would love to have more friends. *She wishes...*

**Exercise 4. Match the formulaic expressions with their meanings.**

- |  |  |
|--|--|
| 1. Long live the bride and groom!            | a) in a way, so to speak   |
| 2. ..., as it were                           | b) Whether that is true or not...  |
| 3. Heaven forbid!                            | c) To appear less hostile when disagreeing   |
| 4. Be that as it may                         | d) Whatever happens...   |
| 5. Far be it from me to disagree / criticise | e) to be frank (used esp. when making an admission or when expressing an unwelcome or controversial opinion) |
| 6. Suffice it to say...                      | f) An exclamation of despair   |
| 7. God bless you                             | g) An exclamation that you hope something won't happen   |
| 8. Heaven help us!                           | h) If it is necessary  |
| 9. If need be...                             | i) We can't do anything to change it   |
| 10. Come what may...                         | j) A suggestion or possibility is unpleasant or ridiculous   |
| 11. ..., so be it.                           | k) It is obvious / I will give a short explanation   |
| 12. God save the Queen!                      | l) We say when somebody sneezes  |
| 13. Perish the thought!                      | m) We want to keep the Queen in health   |
| 14. (If) truth be told                       | n) We wish them to live happily ever after   |

**Exercise 5. Some of these sentences contain mistakes. Find and correct them.**

1. I had rather you didn't take the car; it's just been cleaned.
2. It's high time our employer listens to our grievances.
3. I wish I would be a child again.
4. It's about time I didn't stay at home; I'm twenty-five after all!
5. What a mess; you look as though you've been in a fight!
6. I wish I bought that old house.
7. I'd rather you don't eat all the bread.
8. It's time I go.
9. I wish I own a motorbike.
10. I wish we are not leaving in the morning.
11. I hope it would stop raining.
12. I'd sooner die than go out with that creep.

13. I'd prefer you didn't wait.
14. I wish I didn't listen to you before.
15. If only we knew where he was getting the information from.

**Exercise 6. Study the following extracts. Two of them use appropriate language but four of them use forms which have an incorrect degree of formality. Tick the two correct extracts and rewrite the remaining four using subjunctives (note you may need to use passive forms).**

1. It's vital that claims are submitted to the committee with full supporting documentation.
2. ... and then, can you imagine, the boss insisted that I took little James to lunch. I mean it's not my job to look after the boss's children, is it?
3. Clause 25.6 of the Treatment of Offenders Act suggests that each offender receives a monthly visit from a probation officer.
4. May the President have a long life!
5. 7.30 BBC1. *Trudy Trouble*. In tonight's hilarious episode Sam suggests that Trudy visits the doctor, with predictably comical results!
6. It is imperative that ear protectors are worn at all times when operating the machine lathes.

**Exercise 7. In pairs, make up short dialogues using the following sentences with the Suppositional Mood or Subjunctive I.**

1. I suggest that we all go to the park.
2. It is natural you should like your future job.
3. My recommendation is that we should discuss various plans.
4. It is funny that you should have made up your mind to go there.
5. I didn't tell him anything for fear he should make fun of me.
6. It is my suggestion that we should take a taxi.
7. My request is that you be more attentive.
8. It is odd that you should be so nervous about it.
9. My fear is lest we should be late and get to the cinema hall when the film begins.
10. I have the desire that you should spend a day or two in the country.
11. I called to tell you how sorry I was that such a thing should have happened.

**Exercise 8. Comment on the use of the Oblique Moods.**

**Model:** Come what may.

Come is used in its **Subjunctive I** form in a **simple sentence** in a **formulaic** expression of **concession**.

1. 'Gosh, you were such a cute little boy,' Olivia said, patting his cheek.
2. 'I wish you **wouldn't do** that, Mum,' Dominic complained. 'I'm twenty-one, for goodness' sake.'

3. 'Wait?' said Bill, 'Not unless you'd **rather** the Death Eaters **took** it?'
4. I didn't suggest she **sit** down, nor did I stand up myself.
5. **Be** yours a happy wedding!
6. It wasn't fair to fault Nell over this. It wasn't as if she **were** constantly **inviting** her own mother around or anything.
7. I doubted if the residents of a street where chickens were sometimes blown up to celebrate holidays **worried** much about squatters.
8. He wished she **would ring** and **speak** to him, **ask** about last night at the class.
9. 'Harry, you'd **better take** the Invisibility Cloak.'
10. 'So – what **would** you **like** to do today?'
11. Somebody **fetch** the key.
12. But for the toothache I **would have enjoyed** the concert.
13. 'If only your father **had lived** to see the Shah overthrown!' she said to Sami. 'He **would have been** so happy.'
14. I sat and waited. I rather wished I **hadn't left** that free newspaper on the train.
15. We feared lest she **should discuss** the details of the contract with a stranger.
16. Aidan wished he **were** more observant.
17. And what if we **should** never **hear** from him again?
18. The Health and Safety Executive recommends strobe lighting **should be kept** to a maximum of four hertz (four flashes per second) in clubs and at public events.
19. The wounded feeling had spread from her chest to her left shoulder, and she wondered if she **were having** a heart attack.
20. Even saying it had drained her; she looked as if she **were** about to faint.
21. It's time we **planned** now for what may be.
22. If only I **had** more free time.
23. It appears to me highly important that Mr. Micawber **should**, from the hour of his embarkation, **feel** his position.
24. It's so annoying that she **should have decided** to resign.

### Exercise 9. Translate using the Oblique Moods.

1. А что, если вдруг погода ухудшится?
2. Будь что будет, я пойду отвечать первым.
3. В комнате был такой аромат, словно в ней был миллион роз.
4. Важно, чтобы каждый турист имел при себе страховку.
5. Все выглядит так, словно они узнали о моем решении и сейчас пытаются заставить меня изменить его.
6. Нам давно пора начать этот разговор.
7. У него было такое чувство, словно его обманули.
8. Жаль, что книга не переведена на японский.
9. Боже упаси вас делать такие ошибки!

10. Жаль, что я не покрасил забор вчера: сегодня идет дождь.
11. Он бы предпочел, чтобы друзья пригласили его на собеседование.
12. Жаль, что я уже прочитал всю трилогию.
13. Казалось, дождь никогда не закончится.
14. Мне бы хотелось, чтобы вы меня не перебивали.
15. Я требую, чтобы мне предоставили адвоката.
16. Мой страх, что я не сдам экзамен, не давал мне покоя.
17. Она выглядела так, словно была вполне довольна своей жизнью.
18. Я бы предпочел, чтобы по субботам у нас не было занятий.
19. Она чувствовала, словно что-то необычное должно случиться с ней.
20. Я настаиваю, чтобы ты вызвал такси. Нельзя вести машину в таком состоянии.
21. Естественно, мы были расстроены, узнав, что он решил сменить место работы.
22. Как жаль, что собеседование перенесли на пятницу.
23. Тебе лучше надеть теплую шапку: сегодня холодно.
24. Хорошо, что занятия в субботу отменены.
25. Я бы предпочел поехать в Италию.
26. Пусть кто-нибудь откроет окно.
27. Я взглянул на часы и понял, что мне пора идти на занятия.
28. Я сожалею, что не рассказал обо всем сразу.
29. А что, если мы не найдем подходящий нам дом?
30. Как жаль, что он такой болтливый.
31. Откровенно говоря, этот галстук совсем не сочетается ни с рубашкой, ни с костюмом.
32. Кажется, весна никогда не наступит.
33. У нее был такой вид, как будто она вот-вот рассмеется.
34. Да сопутствует вам успех!
35. Марк взглянул на часы и понял, что ему давно пора было завершить редактирование статьи.
36. Жаль, что мы не проверили перевод.
37. Если понадобится, мы постараемся выполнить перевод к среде.

### **THE OBLIQUE MOODS IN ADVERBIAL CLAUSES**

Adverbial clauses are usually classified according to their meaning, that is according to the relation they bear to the main clause.

The Oblique Moods are found in adverbial clauses of unreal condition and concession, in adverbial clauses of problematic condition, in adverbial clauses of comparison or manner and in adverbial clauses of purpose.

**Subjunctive II** is used:

- 1) in adverbial clauses of **unreal condition**. The main clause contains a form of **the Conditional Mood**:

*If I **had** a map I would lend it to you. Если бы у меня была карта, я бы одолжил ее тебе.*

- 2) in adverbial clauses of **unreal concession** after the conjunction **even if, even though**. The main clause contains a form of **the Conditional Mood**:

***Even if they had wanted** me to stay I would have refused. Даже если бы они хотели, чтобы я остался, я бы отказался.*

Clauses of unreal condition may be introduced asyndetically (without any conjunctions). In this case **inversion** serves as a means of subordination: **if** is omitted and an auxiliary comes before the subject, it is possible only with such forms as **were** and **had**, the negative particle **not** is placed **after the subject**, negative forms are **not contracted**:

***Were I younger** I would stay a little longer. Если бы я был помоложе, я бы задержался подольше.*

***Were I not optimistic** I would cry my eyes out. Если бы я не был оптимистом, я бы себе все глаза выплакал.*

*My popularity would soon suffer **were I to carry out** your orders. Моя популярность пошатнулась бы, если бы я выполнял твои приказы.*

***Had they not wanted** me to stay I would have gone somewhere else. Если бы они не хотели, чтобы я остался, я бы ушел.*

- 3) in adverbial clauses of **comparison** or **manner** introduced by the conjunctions **as if, as though**. After **as if / as though** the form **were** is more usual than was:

*He behaves **as though** he were the owner of the car. (But he is not the owner.) Он ведет себя так, словно он владелец машины (но он не владелец).*

*His voice broke **as if** he were going to cry. Его голос дрогнул, словно он был готов расплакаться.*

*He speaks **if he had** never seen me before. Он так говорит, словно мы никогда раньше не встречались.*

**The Conditional Mood** is used:

- 1) in the main clauses of complex sentences with the subordinate clauses of unreal condition or unreal concession (where **Subjunctive II** is used). The choice of actual forms depends on the time-reference of the actions:

- a) if the unreal actions in both the main and the subordinate clauses relate to the **present** or **future** (the unreal actions are simultaneous with or posterior to the moment of speaking), the **non-perfect** forms of respectively **the Conditional Mood** and **Subjunctive II** are used:

*I **should/would** never forgive myself if I **profited** by his generosity. Я бы никогда не простил себе, если бы воспользовался его щедростью.*

- b) if both the actions contradicting reality relate to the **past** (the unreal actions are prior to the moment of speaking), the **perfect form of the Conditional Mood** is used in the main clause and **perfect Subjunctive II** in the subordinate one:

*I would have gone this morning if I had been able to get away. Я бы уехал сегодня утром, если бы мог.*

- c) the actions in the main and subordinate clauses may have different time-reference. Sentences of this kind are said to have **split condition** (or **mixed type**). The unreal condition may refer to the **past** (the unreal action is prior to the moment of speaking, **perfect Subjunctive II** is used) and the unreal consequence to the **present** (the unreal action is simultaneous with the moment of speaking, a **non-perfect Conditional Mood** form is used):

*If I had worked harder at school I would be sitting in a comfortable office now. Если бы я был более прилежным учеником в школе, я бы работал сейчас в комфортном офисе.*

The unreal condition may refer to **no particular time (non-perfect Subjunctive II)** and the unreal consequence may refer to the **past** (the unreal action is prior to the moment of speaking, a **perfect Conditional Mood** form is used):

*She wouldn't have told me the story if she disliked me. Она бы не рассказала мне эту историю, если бы я ей не нравился.*

Time reference	Clause of unreal condition	Main clause	Example
present / future	non-perfect Subjunctive II	non-perfect Conditional Mood form	<i>If I profited by his generosity I would never forgive myself.</i>
past	perfect Subjunctive II	perfect Conditional Mood form	<i>If I had been able to get away, I would have gone this morning.</i>
mixed type	non-perfect Subjunctive II	perfect Conditional Mood form	<i>If she disliked me, she wouldn't have told me the story.</i>
	perfect Subjunctive II	non-perfect Conditional Mood form	<i>If I had worked harder at school I would be sitting in a comfortable office now.</i>

Complex sentences with the Conditional Mood in the main clause and Subjunctive II in the subordinate clause of unreal condition **do not change in indirect speech**:

*'If I had a permit I could get a job,' he said = He said that if he had a permit he could get a job.*

*'If she had loved Tom,' he said, 'she wouldn't have left him.'* = He said that if she had loved Tom she wouldn't have left him.

2) in the main (main) clauses of complex sentences with subordinate clauses of **problematic condition** (where **the Suppositional Mood** is used):

*If Joe should have the time he **would go** to Mexico. Если бы вдруг у Джо было свободное время, он **бы поехал** в Мексику.*

### **The Suppositional Mood and Subjunctive I:**

1) **the Suppositional Mood** is found in adverbial clauses of **problematic condition** referring to the future. The Suppositional Mood is used to show that the action is possible, though unlikely. Such clauses may be rendered into Russian with the help of ‘случись так, что...’, ‘если случайно...’, ‘если так случится, что...’, ‘если вдруг...’.

In the **main** clause **the Conditional Mood, the Future Indicative or the Imperative Mood** may be used, but usually the Suppositional Mood in adverbial clauses of problematic condition is combined with **the Imperative**.

*If it **should be** wet they would stay at home. Если **бы вдруг** погода была дождливой, они **бы остались** дома.*

*If you **should find** another way out, will you inform me? Если **вдруг** найдете другой выход, сообщите мне?*

*If you **should meet** him, give him my best regards. Если **так случится**, что вы встретитесь, передавай ему от меня привет.*

**Inversion** in conditional clauses is most often found in academic prose. Inversion with **should** is more often than inversion with **were** or **had**.

***Should** I see him, I will inform him about your decision. Если **вдруг** я его увижу, я сообщу ему о вашем решении.*

**The Suppositional Mood** can be used after **even if** just as it can be used after **if** in conditional sentences, to express the idea that the action is not very likely to take place:

***Even if he should find** out he won't do anything about it. **Даже если он это вдруг обнаружит**, он ничего не предпримет.*

<b>STUDY</b>	<p>Subjunctive I form <i>be</i> is sometimes used after <i>if / whether</i>, though this is rather formal (now even slightly archaic), especially in British English:</p> <p><i>If it <b>be</b> inappropriate to have said this, I humbly apologise.</i> <i>If that <b>be</b> so, I'll leave now.</i> <i><b>Whether</b> he <b>be</b> prepared or not, I intend to report the matter.</i></p> <p><b>Subjunctive I</b> is sometimes used in poetry in clauses of condition or concession:</p> <p><i>SHAKESPEARE: If this <b>be</b> error, and upon me proved... (= if this is error)</i> <i>BYRON: <b>Though</b> the heart <b>be</b> still as loving... (= though the heart is)</i></p>
--------------	---

2) in adverbial clauses of **purpose** introduced by the conjunction **so that**, **lest** (= ‘for fear that’, used in literary style) **the non-perfect Suppositional Mood** is used, or, rarely, **Subjunctive I**:

*Mary lowered her eyes so that he should not see the faint gleam of amusement in them. Мэри опустила глаза, чтобы он не заметил ее изумления.*

*Bertha dared to say nothing lest he should hear the tears in her voice. Берта не осмелилась больше ничего сказать, чтобы он не заметил, что она плачет.*

**In case**, which is more usual than **lest** here, can be followed by **the Suppositional Mood** (only in British English) or by an ordinary present or past tense:

*He dared not spend the money in case someone should ask / someone asked. Он не осмеливался потратить деньги, на том случай, если кто-то спросит о них.*

After the conjunctions **that**, **so that**, **in order that**, **so**, **may (might) + infinitive or can (could) + infinitive** can be used:

*I tell you this so that you may understand the situation. Я рассказываю тебе это, чтобы ты мог разобраться в ситуации.*

*He came up closer so that he could see the picture better. Он подошел поближе, чтобы получше рассмотреть картину.*

**Inversion** in different types of conditional sentences is shown in the table below:

<b>Real</b>	<b>Problematic</b> (weakened condition)	<b>Unreal</b>		
<b>If I see her,</b> I shall tell her everything.	<b>If I should see her,</b> I shall tell/would tell her everything.	<b>If I were you,</b> I wouldn't do that.	<b>If I saw her,</b> I would tell her everything.	<b>If I had seen her,</b> I would have told her everything.
—	<b>Should I see her,</b> I shall tell/would tell her everything.	<b>Were I you,</b> I wouldn't do that.	<b>Were I to see her,</b> I would tell her everything.	<b>Had I seen her,</b> I would have told her everything.
<i>Если я увижу ее, скажу ей все.</i>	<i>Если вдруг (случись так, что) увижу ее, скажу/сказал бы ей все.</i>	<i>Если бы я был на вашем месте, я бы не стал этого делать.</i>	<i>Если бы я увидел ее, сказал бы ей все.</i>	<i>Если бы я увидел ее, рассказал бы ей все.</i>

## LESSON 8

### ADVERBIAL CLAUSES OF REAL AND UNREAL CONDITION AND CONCESSION

**Exercise 1. Comment on why the Oblique Moods is used in the following sentences:**

**Model:** I **would never forgive** myself if I **profited** by his generosity.

**Would never forgive** is used in **the Conditional Mood** in its **non-perfect** form. It is used in the main clause of a complex sentence. **Profited** is used in **Subjunctive II** in its **non-perfect** form. It is used in the adverbial clause of **unreal** condition. Both **the Conditional Mood** and **Subjunctive II** refer **unreal** actions to the future.

1. Because, my love, if I **told** anybody about this, Constance **would be** in a mad house.
2. If Eugene **didn't speak** to the reporter there **would be** no article and there **would be** no publicity for the museum.
3. If you **were** to randomly select one hundred people from a phone directory, you **would not** only **find** a story, you **would find** one hundred stories, because everybody, every single person, has a story to tell.
4. I asked you if you **were** to write a story for me then and there about absolutely anything, what **would it be**?
5. If Constance **asked** you to do a story about tea, you'd **tell** her to go and jump.
6. Raphie watched it and wondered: If he **dived** into that mug, where **would it take** him?
7. I **wouldn't mind** if you **kept** your eyes open for more of that kind of thing.
8. If I **were** you, I'd just **keep** quiet about it all and **make** the best of a very fortunate situation.
9. No way! I **wouldn't do** that even if I **knew** how.
10. I'd **be lying** if I **said** my heart didn't kick into a higher gear when I turned the knob and pulled.
11. 'Can you come by my place around nine-thirty?' – 'I **could** if I **knew** where you live,' I said.
12. In fact, she said, I think her father **would come** even if you **were** the only one here.
13. 'I want to speak. I **would** if I **could**. I am trying,' she says, quietly.
14. I **wouldn't mind** if my dad **had** half a dozen wives.
15. And even if they **were** colleagues, I **would** still **find** it hard to explain the apparent desperation of my desire to see them.
16. Some people **would be** really freaked out if somebody said that about their wife, but Kai never transmitted anything to me, he just carried on taking care of us.

17. 'We know that,' said Mr. Weasley quietly, 'but it **would make** our efforts tonight seem rather pointless if you **left**.'
18. If you **could visit**, it **would cheer** him **up** so much.
19. If I **were going** back to school it **would be** different.

**Exercise 2. Supply the correct forms of the verbs (the Conditional Mood in the main clauses and Subjunctive II in the adverbial clauses of unreal condition). Refer the unreal actions to the present/future. Make unreal situations real.**

**Model:** If he got up earlier, he **would get** (*get*) to work on time.

**But he doesn't get up early, so he doesn't get to work on time.**

1. Sally would answer the phone if she \_\_\_\_\_ (*be*) in her office right now.
2. If I had enough apples, I \_\_\_\_\_ (*bake*) an apple pie this afternoon.
3. If the weather were nice today, we \_\_\_\_\_ (*go*) to the zoo.
4. If he \_\_\_\_\_ (*take out*) a loan, he would be able to buy a car.
5. Even if you \_\_\_\_\_ (*not talk*) now, you would be able to concentrate on your work.
6. I \_\_\_\_\_ (*speak*) to her if she apologized for her appalling behavior.
7. If you \_\_\_\_\_ (*stop*) complaining, we would be able to get some work done.
8. We \_\_\_\_\_ (*have*) some fresh air if you opened the window.
9. If the baby \_\_\_\_\_ (*sleep*) now, I would be reading a book.
10. If the police \_\_\_\_\_ (*not fine*) people, very few people would obey the law.
11. Even if I \_\_\_\_\_ (*not have*) enough money, I would go with you.
12. If you \_\_\_\_\_ (*decide*) to leave the company, we would be happy to give you a good reference.
13. If you didn't wear such thin clothes, you \_\_\_\_\_ (*not feel*) cold!
14. If you \_\_\_\_\_ (*listen*) to common sense, there would be no point my talking to you.
15. If we reduced taxes, people \_\_\_\_\_ (*have*) more money.
16. If you were listening to me, you \_\_\_\_\_ (*not ask*) so many questions now.
17. If you slept under a mosquito net, you \_\_\_\_\_ (*not bite*) so often.
18. If they \_\_\_\_\_ (*ban*) the sale of alcohol at football matches, there would be less violence.

**Exercise 3. Supply the correct forms of the verbs (the Conditional Mood in the main clauses and Subjunctive II in the adverbial clauses of unreal condition):**

1. Tim \_\_\_\_\_ (*win*) the championship if he \_\_\_\_\_ (*train*) harder.
2. If everybody \_\_\_\_\_ (*protest*), they \_\_\_\_\_ (*stop*) killing whales.
3. The countryside \_\_\_\_\_ (*be*) more beautiful if people \_\_\_\_\_ (*not set fire*) to the forests every year.

4. If you \_\_\_\_\_ (*stop*) smoking, you \_\_\_\_\_ (*feel*) much better.
5. If the temperature \_\_\_\_\_ (*drop*) a bit more, it \_\_\_\_\_ (*snow*), but I don't think it will.
6. I \_\_\_\_\_ (*read*) the book if \_\_\_\_\_ (*be*) interesting, but it's so boring.
7. If my boyfriend \_\_\_\_\_ (*treat*) me like that, I \_\_\_\_\_ (*break up*) with him.
8. It's too bad Helen isn't here. If she \_\_\_\_\_ (*be*) here, she \_\_\_\_\_ (*know*) what to do.
9. You should tell your father exactly what happened. If I \_\_\_\_\_ (*be*) you, I \_\_\_\_\_ (*tell*) him the truth as soon as possible.
10. That sounds like a good job offer. If I \_\_\_\_\_ (*be*) you, I \_\_\_\_\_ (*accept*) it.
11. If you \_\_\_\_\_ (*sell*) more products now, you \_\_\_\_\_ (*earn*) more money.
12. If you \_\_\_\_\_ (*drive*) more carefully, you \_\_\_\_\_ (*not have*) so many accidents.
13. What we \_\_\_\_\_ (*do*) now, if we \_\_\_\_\_ (*not lie*) on this beach?
14. Where you \_\_\_\_\_ (*like*) to live, if you \_\_\_\_\_ (*not live*) in Paris?
15. What you \_\_\_\_\_ (*do*) if you suddenly \_\_\_\_\_ (*lose*) your passport?
16. I'm sure Sue \_\_\_\_\_ (*understand*) everything if you \_\_\_\_\_ (*explain*) the situation to her.
17. If you \_\_\_\_\_ (*take*) more exercise, you probably \_\_\_\_\_ (*feel*) healthier.
18. If we all \_\_\_\_\_ (*work*) together now, we \_\_\_\_\_ (*finish*) our work sooner.
19. We happily \_\_\_\_\_ (*buy*) this house if it \_\_\_\_\_ (*not be*) so small.
20. If you \_\_\_\_\_ (*not panic*) now, you \_\_\_\_\_ (*find*) the solution to your problem.
21. If you \_\_\_\_\_ (*complain*) to the manager, I think he \_\_\_\_\_ (*help*) you.
22. If Tom \_\_\_\_\_ (*be*) good at maths, he \_\_\_\_\_ (*become*) an accountant.
23. If your father \_\_\_\_\_ (*be*) here, he \_\_\_\_\_ (*be*) shocked to see what you are doing.
24. Even if he \_\_\_\_\_ (*not be*) so bad-tempered, I \_\_\_\_\_ (*go*) out with him.
25. If you \_\_\_\_\_ (*speak*) more slowly, I \_\_\_\_\_ (*understand*) you better.
26. I \_\_\_\_\_ (*hate*) myself if I \_\_\_\_\_ (*deceive*) him.
27. You \_\_\_\_\_ (*be*) horrified if I \_\_\_\_\_ (*tell*) you what I have had to go through.
28. 'May I read this?' – 'I \_\_\_\_\_ (*not bother*) if I \_\_\_\_\_ (*be*) you.'
29. If it \_\_\_\_\_ (*not be*) for the children, I \_\_\_\_\_ (*leave*) you tomorrow.
30. If governments \_\_\_\_\_ (*spend*) less money on developing weapons and more on health and education, the world \_\_\_\_\_ (*be*) a better place.

<b>STUDY</b>	<p>The modal verbs <b>could</b> or <b>might</b> may be used instead of the Conditional Mood auxiliary <b>would</b> in the main clause:</p> <p><i>If you tried again you <b>would</b> succeed. (certain result)</i></p> <p><i>If you tried again you <b>might</b> succeed. (possible result = <b>would perhaps succeed</b>)</i></p> <p><i>If I knew her number I <b>could</b> ring her up. (ability = <b>would be able to ring</b>)</i></p> <p><i>If he had a permit he <b>could</b> get a Job. (ability or permission = <b>would be able to get / would be allowed to get</b>)</i></p>
--------------	--

**Exercise 4. Supply the correct forms of the verbs. Use the modal verbs *could* or *might* in the main clause and comment on their form and meaning.**

**Model:** If she **were** (*be*) here now, she **could/might give** (*give*) us some advice.

1. If he \_\_\_\_\_ (*fail*) in his present job, he \_\_\_\_\_ (*think*) about another career.
2. If you \_\_\_\_\_ (*can play*) a musical instrument, you \_\_\_\_\_ (*help*) with the school orchestra.
3. If they \_\_\_\_\_ (*have*) the right qualifications, they \_\_\_\_\_ (*apply*) for better jobs.
4. If she \_\_\_\_\_ (*can have*) some lessons, she \_\_\_\_\_ (*improve*) her performance.
5. If we \_\_\_\_\_ (*run*) our own business, we \_\_\_\_\_ (*be*) more independent.
6. If John \_\_\_\_\_ (*go*) to his home town, he \_\_\_\_\_ (*visit*) his mother.
7. If Frank \_\_\_\_\_ (*want*) advice, he \_\_\_\_\_ (*ask*) his bank manager.
8. If we \_\_\_\_\_ (*be*) able to pay better wages, we \_\_\_\_\_ (*take on*) more staff.
9. If Susan \_\_\_\_\_ (*feel*) like seeing the sights, she \_\_\_\_\_ (*take*) a bus tour.
10. I \_\_\_\_\_ (*lend*) you my car if I \_\_\_\_\_ (*want*).
11. It \_\_\_\_\_ (*be*) fun if Roberta \_\_\_\_\_ (*write*) a book.
12. He \_\_\_\_\_ (*change*) his mind if we \_\_\_\_\_ (*talk*) to him.
13. If it \_\_\_\_\_ (*not rain*) we \_\_\_\_\_ (*play*) tennis.
14. If she \_\_\_\_\_ (*ask*) me politely, I \_\_\_\_\_ (*feel*) like helping her.
15. If I \_\_\_\_\_ (*have*) more money, I \_\_\_\_\_ (*get*) a small flat.
16. If you \_\_\_\_\_ (*cook*) that in butter, it \_\_\_\_\_ (*taste*) better.

**Exercise 5. Supply the appropriate auxiliary verb.**

1. I don't have a pen, but if I \_\_\_\_\_, I would lend it to you.
2. He is busy right now, but if he \_\_\_\_\_, he would help us.
3. I didn't vote in the last election, but if I \_\_\_\_\_, I would have voted for Senator Anderson.
4. I don't have enough money, but if I \_\_\_\_\_, I would buy that book.
5. The weather is cold today, but if it \_\_\_\_\_, I would go swimming.
6. She didn't come, but if she \_\_\_\_\_, she would have met my brother.
7. I'm not a good cook, but if I \_\_\_\_\_, I would make all of my own meals.
8. I have to go to class this afternoon, but if I \_\_\_\_\_, I would go downtown with you.
9. He didn't go to a doctor, but if he \_\_\_\_\_, the cut on his hand wouldn't have got infected.
10. I always pay my bills. If I \_\_\_\_\_, I would get in a lot of trouble.

11. Helium is lighter than air. If it \_\_\_\_\_, a helium-filled balloon wouldn't float upward.
12. I called my husband to tell him I would be late. If I \_\_\_\_\_, he would have got worried about me.

<b>STUDY</b>	<p>We often say <b>If I were you, I would/I'd...</b> when we want to give people <b>advice</b>.</p> <p><i>If I were you, I'd get a new car. (= You had better get a new car.)</i></p> <p><i>I wouldn't stand there if I were you. (= You had better not stand there.)</i></p>
--------------	---

**Exercise 6. Write sentences with *if I were you*, using the expressions in the box.**

call the police at once	fly	not sell it
join a club	see a doctor	take a holiday

1. 'I feel ill.' 'If I were you...'
2. 'I'm really tired.' 'If...'
3. 'I haven't got any friends.' 'If...'
4. 'Shall I take the train to Scotland?' 'I would...'
5. 'Somebody has stolen my car.' 'If...'
6. John wants to buy my motorbike. 'I...'

**Talk to your neighbor. Listen to his/her complaints and give advice using the pattern above.**

**Exercise 7. John Baker has won lot of money in the lottery. His family and friends are giving him advice. Look at the pictures and use the words in the box to complete the sentences.**

buy a sports car	give the money away	have a big party
put the money in the bank	start a business	stop work
travel round the world	buy a house	

1. **John's girlfriend:** If I were you...
2. **His mother:**...
3. **His father:**...
4. **His brother:**...
5. **His grandmother:**...
6. **His sister:**...
7. **His friend Joe:**...
8. **His friend Stephanie:**...

**Exercise 8. The following things might happen. Say what you would do if they happened to you.**

**Model:** *If I found a gold ring in the street...*

If I found a gold ring in the street, **I would give it to my sister.**

*I might attract a lot of attention.*

**If I sang a song on the street corner,** I might attract a lot of attention.

1. If I lost my voice...
2. If I forgot my best friend's birthday...
3. If I saw someone hurt in an accident...
4. ...I might attract a lot of attention.
5. If I spilled orange juice on my passport...
6. If I moved to the USA...
7. If all the lights suddenly went out...
8. If I had no classes tomorrow...
9. ...I would paint my body.
10. If you went away...
11. If today were the last day of my life...
12. If I could have any job I wanted...
13. ...I would hop on one foot.
14. If I were an English teacher...
15. If I lived on a tropical island...
16. ...I might climb on the roof.
17. If I lost my memory...
18. ...I would climb a tree.
19. If we talked to each other...

**Exercise 9. What would you do if...?**

1. If you heard a strange noise in your house in the night? (go and look, phone the police, hide under the bedclothes)
2. If you found a lot of money in the street? (keep it, try to find the person who had lost it, take it to the police)
3. If you saw a child stealing from a shop? (tell the child to stop, tell a shop assistant, do nothing)
4. If a shop assistant gave you too much change? (tell him/her, take the money and say nothing)
5. If you found a dead mouse in your kitchen? (throw it out, ask somebody to throw it out, run)
6. If you found a suitcase on the pavement outside a bank? (take it into the bank, take it to the police, take it home, leave it)
7. If you found a friend's diary? (read it, give it to him/her without reading it)
8. If you had a free year and a lot of money? (travel round the world, study..., go to...)

## Exercise 10. Memory game.

You'll need cards to play the game.

On each card write an adjective in large letters so that it can be seen around the room.

**SUGGESTIONS:** *sad, drunk, lonely, stranded, nauseous, hungry, thirsty, nervous, angry, rich, sick, sleepy, famous, tired, poor, lost, married, single, scared, jilted.*

Sit or stand in a circle and distribute the cards.

The first student holds up his/her card and composes a sentence, using the untrue present conditional.

**Example card:** *lonely*

**Example sentence:** **If I were lonely, I would call my family.**

The second student says his/her sentence and repeats student one's sentence. Continue around the circle, with each new student adding a sentence and repeating all the previous sentences. The last student will have to remember the sentences from all the other students. It is important that students hold their cards toward the circle at all times because they serve as clues. Students may not write but may cue their classmates through gestures.

## Exercise 11. Change the following statements into conditional sentences.

**Model:** I don't have a spare ticket, I can't take you to the concert.

**If I had** a spare ticket, I **could/would take** you to the concert.

1. It is snowing, so I won't go with you.
2. This child is crying because his mother isn't here.
3. She drinks too much coffee, so she doesn't feel calm.
4. I'm not going to buy that book because it's too expensive.
5. We can't have lunch in the garden because it's raining.
6. She can't walk without help so she doesn't go out very often.
7. Scientists are worried because the climate is undergoing such radical changes.
8. People do not understand him because he doesn't speak clearly.
9. He will stay in one of the spare rooms because I'm not too sure if he's got anywhere else to go.
10. Grandpa is not wearing his hearing aid because it's broken.
11. She isn't smiling, not because she is embarrassed.
12. I'm enjoying myself, so I won't leave.
13. 'No! Wait! I'm sorry for laughing. You misunderstood. I'm laughing because I'm happy, excited, relieved,' she grinned.
14. 'Your friend will be delighted because it's good news.'

15. 'You can't write all of this, Kitty, because there are other people involved.'
16. I haven't got a key, so I can't get in.
17. You may want a chat, so just give me a ring.
18. Nigel hasn't got satellite TV, so he can't watch the game.

### **Exercise 12. Clue.**

1. One student volunteers to leave the room and, when he/she returns, will guess the word chosen by the class from clues given by the rest of the class. The volunteer can ask questions if they are in the form of the untrue present.
2. While the volunteer is out of the room, decide on a category (suggestions: occupations, food, school material). Have the class choose a word in that category. Brainstorm together the kinds of clues that can be given. They must be in the form of the untrue present conditional.

#### **Example 1: food server**

**Clues:** *If I were you, I would wear a uniform.*

*If I were you, I'd never have dirty hands.*

*If I were you, I would talk to many people.*

Also, decide which clues should be saved for last. (For example: '*If I were you, I would serve customers quickly in order to get a good tip.*')

#### **Example 2: mustard**

**Clues:** *If I were you, I'd be careful not to get this on my clothes.*

*If I were you, I'd never eat this by itself.*

*If you were a waitress, you would put this on the table next to the ketchup.*

**Last clue:** *If I were you, I would always put it on hot dogs.*

3. When the volunteer returns, students take turns offering clues, but they must be in the form of the untrue present conditional.

### **Exercise 13. Translate into English using Subjunctive II and the Conditional Mood.**

1. Если бы вы были более инициативны, вас бы порекомендовали на повышение.
2. Если бы мне предложили работу на условиях частичной занятости, я бы согласилась.
3. Ты бы смирился с монотонной, неинтересной работой, если бы она хорошо оплачивалась?
4. Если бы ты начал выполнять перевод прямо сейчас, ты бы успел завершить его вовремя.
5. Если бы ты устроился на работу со свободным распорядком дня, ты смог бы уделять больше внимания своей семье.

6. На твоём месте я бы обратился к адвокату и не дожидался бы ответа своего начальника.
7. Если бы у нас не было два таких больших чемодана с собой, мы бы могли пойти на вокзал пешком.
8. Даже если бы сейчас не шел дождь, я бы предпочел остаться дома.
9. Мы были бы благодарны, если бы приняли участие в обсуждении проекта.
10. На вашем месте, я бы с ними не спорила. То, что они говорят, – правда.
11. Куда бы вы поехали отдыхать, если бы у вас сейчас был отпуск?
12. Я бы с удовольствием присоединился к вам, если бы не было так поздно.
13. На вашем месте я бы не принимал такое скоропалительное и необдуманное решение.
14. Даже если бы он что-то знал об их поездке, он бы все равно ничего не сказал.
15. Если ты бы не был так занят, мы могли бы пойти куда-нибудь пообедать.
16. Что бы ты сделал, если бы узнал о планируемом сокращении?
17. Ты согласился бы принимать это лекарство, если бы узнал, что у него есть серьезные побочные эффекты?
18. Если бы ты мог провести день со знаменитостью, с кем бы ты встретился?
19. Если бы я выиграл в лотерею, я бы купил яхту.
20. Если бы ты обратился к нему, он мог бы помочь тебе.

#### **Exercise 14. Choose the most suitable verb form.**

1. If I (*live/lived*) to be 70...
2. If I (*live/lived*) to be 150...
3. If I (*am/were*) better looking...
4. If I (*wake/woke*) up early tomorrow...
5. If everybody (*gives/gave*) ten percent of their income to charity...
6. If everybody (*thinks/thought*) like me...
7. If there (*is/was*) nothing good on TV...
8. If my English (*is/was*) better next year ...
9. If the government (*bans/banned*) cars from the city centres next year...
10. If I (*have/had*) bad dreams tonight...
11. If the government (*bans/banned*) single-use *plastic* bags this year...
12. If I (*have/had*) the opportunity to write a good story...
13. If I (*am/were*) you...
14. If I (*become/became*) an actress/actor...
15. If I (*do/did*) my written assignment...
16. If I (*attend/attended*) all the classes...

**LESSON 9**  
**ADVERBIAL CLAUSES OF UNREAL CONDITION**  
**AND CONCESSION REFERRING TO THE PAST AND OF MIXED TYPE**

**Exercise 1. Comment on why the Oblique Moods is used in the following sentences:**

**Model:** I **would never have forgiven** myself if I **had profited** by his generosity.  
**Would never have forgiven** is used in the **Conditional Mood** in its **perfect** form. It is used in the **main clause** of a complex sentence.  
**Had profited** is used in its **perfect Subjunctive II**. It is used in the adverbial clause of **unreal condition**. The perfect forms refer the unreal actions to the **past**.

1. If Kitty **had been told** that Ambrose had never before spoken to a human being, she **would have believed** it.
2. If he **hadn't been forced** to bring them here, Jessica and Matt **would have taken** their gap year and probably **been** thousands of miles from London on that fateful day.
3. The later albums were more clearly labeled, but even if they **had not been** he **would have recognized** his paternal grandparents, sitting on a wide lawn with their firstborn, who grew up to be his Aunt Louise.
4. I'm sure I **would have known** if she **had gone out** during the night.
5. If Harry **had not seen** Dudley's lips move, he **might not have believed** it.
6. Perhaps we **wouldn't have been** so hard on Robson if it **hadn't been** for one central, unshiftable fact: Robson was our age.
7. But it **wouldn't have lasted** any longer if Margaret **had been** more mysterious.
8. If she'd **wanted** me to spend the money on a holiday for two, she'd **have said** so.
9. Oh, in those days she **wouldn't have brought** rugs from home even if she'd **had** the space.
10. If Margaret and I **had stayed** together, I dare say I **would have been allowed** to be more of a doting grandfather.
11. If we **hadn't been running** all this way, we **wouldn't have become** so tired.
12. If he'd **gone** straight from first date to 'meet my kid' I **would have run** a mile.
13. If she **had met** someone she fancied where **would they have gone**?
14. There **could have been** no future for them at all if he **had sat down** behind Aidan's back and **told** the man's daughter what he didn't know himself.
15. It **would have marked** him out if he **had known** her real name.
16. If her mother **had just stood up** for her things **would have been** different.

**Exercise 2. Supply the correct forms of the verbs in complex sentences with subordinate clauses of unreal condition.**

1. If we \_\_\_\_\_ (*bear*) a year earlier, I \_\_\_\_\_ (*not have*) to do military service.
2. If you \_\_\_\_\_ (*ask*) me, I \_\_\_\_\_ (*lend*) you my car.
3. I \_\_\_\_\_ (*not go*) out yesterday if you \_\_\_\_\_ (*not ask*) me to.
4. I \_\_\_\_\_ (*stay*) longer if she \_\_\_\_\_ (*want*) me to.
5. We \_\_\_\_\_ (*go*) to his party yesterday if we \_\_\_\_\_ (*be*) able to find a baby-sitter.
6. I \_\_\_\_\_ (*visit*) you in hospital if I \_\_\_\_\_ (*know*) you were there.
7. If I \_\_\_\_\_ (*not be*) so shy at the party last Saturday, I \_\_\_\_\_ (*make*) more friends.
8. He \_\_\_\_\_ (*not get*) the job, if he \_\_\_\_\_ (*not be*) successful at the interview.
9. She \_\_\_\_\_ (*get*) promotion last year if she \_\_\_\_\_ (*not argue*) with the boss.
10. If I \_\_\_\_\_ (*know*) you already had tickets, I \_\_\_\_\_ (*not stand*) in a queue for so long.
11. If I \_\_\_\_\_ (*visit*) Athens last year, I \_\_\_\_\_ (*phone*) you.
12. If you \_\_\_\_\_ (*tell*) me earlier, I \_\_\_\_\_ (*be*) able to help you.
13. I \_\_\_\_\_ (*not be*) late yesterday if I \_\_\_\_\_ (*not oversleep*).
14. If you \_\_\_\_\_ (*study*) more, you \_\_\_\_\_ (*get*) a better mark.
15. If the flight \_\_\_\_\_ (*not delay*), my boss \_\_\_\_\_ (*arrive*) on time.
16. If I \_\_\_\_\_ (*not get*) the prize, I \_\_\_\_\_ (*be*) very upset.
17. If you \_\_\_\_\_ (*tell*) what had happened, I \_\_\_\_\_ (*not go*) there.
18. If they \_\_\_\_\_ (*wait*) another month, they \_\_\_\_\_ (*get*) a better price for their house.
19. If he \_\_\_\_\_ (*be*) more careful, he \_\_\_\_\_ (*spot*) the mistake.
20. If only I \_\_\_\_\_ (*invest*) in that company, I \_\_\_\_\_ (*be*) a millionaire by now.
21. If he \_\_\_\_\_ (*not drive*) so fast, he \_\_\_\_\_ (*not hit*) the motorcyclist.

<b>STUDY</b>	<p>The modal verbs <b>could</b> or <b>might</b> may be used instead of the Conditional Mood auxiliary <b>would</b> in the main clause:</p> <p><i>If we had found him earlier we <b>could have saved</b> his life. (ability = would perhaps have been able to save)</i></p> <p><i>If we had found him earlier we <b>might have saved</b> his life. (possibility = would perhaps have saved)</i></p>
--------------	--

**Exercise 3. Supply the correct forms of the verbs. Use the modal verbs *could* or *might* in the main clause and comment on their form and meaning.**

**Model: If I had managed (*manage*) to repair my car earlier, I **could/might have driven** (*drive*) you to London.**

1. If I \_\_\_\_\_ (*know*) last week that she was ill, I \_\_\_\_\_ (*visit*) her.
2. If you \_\_\_\_\_ (*ask*) politely yesterday, I \_\_\_\_\_ (*help*) you.
3. We \_\_\_\_\_ (*be*) at the airport for hours if we \_\_\_\_\_ (*not know*) that the flight was delayed.
4. I \_\_\_\_\_ (*make*) a bad mistake, if I \_\_\_\_\_ (*not read*) the instructions.
5. We \_\_\_\_\_ (*have*) an accident if our car \_\_\_\_\_ (*not be*) properly serviced.
6. If he \_\_\_\_\_ (*fasten*) his seatbelt, he \_\_\_\_\_ (*not be*) hurt.
7. She \_\_\_\_\_ (*not hear*) the news if she \_\_\_\_\_ (*not turn on*) the radio this morning.
8. They \_\_\_\_\_ (*play*) better at the competitions if they \_\_\_\_\_ (*have*) more training.
9. If you \_\_\_\_\_ (*tell*) me you needed money, I \_\_\_\_\_ (*lend*) you some.
10. I \_\_\_\_\_ (*save*) some food for you, if I \_\_\_\_\_ (*know*) you were going to be late.
11. If he \_\_\_\_\_ (*not look*) for a bag, he never \_\_\_\_\_ (*see*) it.
12. If only Matty \_\_\_\_\_ (*not be*) so sick all day, we \_\_\_\_\_ (*leave*) earlier.
13. If she \_\_\_\_\_ (*start*) to cry, anything \_\_\_\_\_ (*happen*).
14. If she \_\_\_\_\_ (*have*) matches, maybe she \_\_\_\_\_ (*make*) a fire – the rain \_\_\_\_\_ (*keep*) it from spreading-and someone \_\_\_\_\_ (*see*) the smoke.
15. If she \_\_\_\_\_ (*think*) to mark the place with something bright – a piece of her nasty old shredded poncho, say – she \_\_\_\_\_ (*go*) back. But she hadn't, and that was that.
16. If I \_\_\_\_\_ (*be*) you, I \_\_\_\_\_ (*check*) my facts before I wrote that letter.
17. If you \_\_\_\_\_ (*be*) so hungry, you \_\_\_\_\_ (*not miss*) breakfast.
18. If he (*not catch*) the 5.30 train, he \_\_\_\_\_ (*not arrive*) for another two hours.
19. He \_\_\_\_\_ (*feel*) very tired today if he \_\_\_\_\_ (*play*) rugby yesterday.
20. If the snake bite \_\_\_\_\_ (*be*) poisonous, you \_\_\_\_\_ (*feel*) very ill now.
21. If I \_\_\_\_\_ (*be*) in your position, I \_\_\_\_\_ (*answer*) his letter by now.

**Exercise 4. Rewrite the following sentences as conditionals.**

**Model:** Eric was with us so we didn't get lost.

**If Eric hadn't been** with us, we **would have got** lost.

1. I was sweating because it was too hot.
2. I didn't enjoy school, so I didn't do very well.
3. John ate too much birthday cake, so he was sick.
4. As we'd already seen the film we didn't go to the cinema.
5. Zoe tripped and fell just as she was about to win the race.

6. I had an accident because I wasn't watching the road.
7. My father didn't earn much money, so life wasn't easy for us.
8. I'm afraid I don't know the answer, so I can't help you.
9. Because the train was ten minutes late I managed to catch it.
10. I'm living in Italy because I got married to an Italian.
11. They're so reserved that I speak to them very infrequently.
12. We don't get on very well because she's so aggressive.
13. Sorry I didn't phone you but I lost the bit of paper with your number on it.
14. We came home from our holiday early because we ran out of money.
15. The house didn't burn down because the fire brigade came immediately.
16. The men were wearing protective clothing, so they were all quite safe.
17. I missed the end of the film, so I don't know who the murderer was.
18. We got soaking wet on Sunday and now we've all got colds.
19. The weather could be bad on Saturday, in which case we'll have to cancel the barbecue.
20. You should have started your project earlier. You're so far behind now.
21. You didn't know how unpopular Eric was when you invited him to your party.
22. There's a possibility of a train strike on Monday so I might not be able to come.
23. We've got a broken window because you and your friends were playing football in the back yard!
24. Jimmie's father might buy him a new bike; it depends on him passing the exams.

**Exercise 5. Complete the sentences using your own ideas.**

1. If I hadn't drunk so much coffee last night...
2. If I hadn't met Paul at that concert two years ago...
3. He would have understood it if...
4. If she had given me her number...
5. It would have been better if...
6. If I were you...
7. If I had been trying harder...
8. I would have failed my exams if...
9. If you had got up earlier...
10. The argument wouldn't have started if...
11. If you hadn't overfed the cat...
12. If I had seen an accident...
13. The flight wouldn't have been delayed if...
14. He would have signed the contract if...
15. Marie paid £200 for a dress. If I were Marie...
16. I would walk in the rain if...
17. If I had been offered a well-paid job...
18. If I had had any sense...

**Exercise 6. Change the following statements into conditional sentences.**

1. The phone was broken so I didn't call you.
2. They laughed. Jim didn't know how to reboot the PC.
3. I felt so ashamed since I didn't speak his language.
4. She didn't take an umbrella with her and got wet.
5. I wasn't careful enough and so I hurt myself.
6. I made up a silly excuse because she saw the lipstick.
7. He proposed to her and they got married.
8. We didn't go out. Tom was watching the game.
9. He didn't show up. I had dinner alone.
10. I fell asleep because the lesson was so boring.
11. She didn't have the money so she didn't buy the house.
12. She didn't see him so she didn't talk to him.
13. Mary didn't study. She didn't pass the exam.
14. She didn't read the newspaper. She didn't see the advertisement.
15. You didn't take your umbrella so you got very wet.
16. He swam in the pool for two hours. He felt tired.
17. They didn't apply for the job. They weren't interviewed.

**Exercise 7. Do you ever think about what would or would not have happened if ...? Make a chain story, using the following.**

If I \_\_\_\_\_ (*not use*) so much gas, I \_\_\_\_\_ (*not have*) such a big gas bill.

If I \_\_\_\_\_ (*must not*) pay my gas bill, I \_\_\_\_\_ (*not go*) out in the rain.

If I \_\_\_\_\_ (*not go*) out in the rain, I \_\_\_\_\_ (*not catch*) a cold.

If I \_\_\_\_\_ (*not catch*) a cold, I \_\_\_\_\_ (*not carry*) a handkerchief.

If I \_\_\_\_\_ (*not carry*) a handkerchief, I \_\_\_\_\_ (*not drop*) it.

If I \_\_\_\_\_ (*not drop*) my handkerchief, Juan \_\_\_\_\_ (*not pick*) it up.

If Juan \_\_\_\_\_ (*not pick*) up my handkerchief, we \_\_\_\_\_ (*never meet*).

**Now try to invent a similar chain (with at least six links) linking 'If Rosie hadn't failed her maths exam...' and '... she wouldn't have realized how interesting elephants could be.'**

**Exercise 8. Getting up early is bad for you. Read the text in the box and make sentences.**

get up early → catch the 8.15 train → sit by a beautiful foreign woman → fall in love and marry her → go to live to her country → work in her father's diamond business → become very rich → go into politics → save the world

**If I had got up early, I would have caught the 8.15 train.**

1. If I had caught \_\_\_\_\_
2. \_\_\_\_\_
3. \_\_\_\_\_ and married her.
4. \_\_\_\_\_
5. \_\_\_\_\_
6. \_\_\_\_\_
7. \_\_\_\_\_

**Exercise 9. Hot weather is good for you. Read the text and complete the sentences.**

It was hot, so my mother opened the door. A cat came in and ate her supper, so she went to the shop to buy food. In the shop she saw an advertisement for a secretary. So she got a new job, and met my father. I'm glad it was a hot day!

**If it hadn't been hot, my mother wouldn't have opened the door.**

1. If she hadn't opened the door, the cat \_\_\_\_\_ her supper.
2. \_\_\_\_\_ her supper, \_\_\_\_\_ the shop.
3. \_\_\_\_\_ the shop, \_\_\_\_\_ the advertisement.
4. \_\_\_\_\_ the advertisement, \_\_\_\_\_ a new job.
5. \_\_\_\_\_ a new job, \_\_\_\_\_ my father.

**Exercise 10. Translate into English using Subjunctive II and the Conditional Mood.**

1. Я бы не уволился, если бы они повысили тогда зарплату.
2. Я бы не провалил экзамен, если бы готовился к нему целый год.
3. Мы бы не пошли в ресторан, если бы знали цены.
4. Вы бы купили тот дом, если бы вам предложили его по выгодной цене?
5. Я бы, возможно, не получил эту высокооплачиваемую работу, если бы не проявил свои лучшие качества на собеседовании.
6. Если бы ты сказала об этом раньше, я бы смогла что-то сделать.
7. Даже если бы ты позвонила мне вчера, я бы не смогла прийти.
8. Если бы в прошлом году у нее уже были права, мы бы взяли машину напрокат.
9. Если бы она регулярно принимала лекарство, то результат бы появился гораздо раньше.
10. Ты бы тогда согласился на это предложение, если бы тебе сразу рассказали обо всех бонусах?

### Exercise 11. Match the following parts to make conditional sentences.

- |   |   |
|---|---|
| 1. If you were a more sensitive person, ...                   | a) I'm sure he'd be a famous musician by now. |
| 2. If the train hadn't been delayed, ...                      | b) you wouldn't be so hungry now.             |
| 3. If President Kennedy hadn't been assassinated in 1963, ... | c) the Cold War might have ended sooner.      |
| 4. If it hadn't been for the awful weather, ...               | d) you wouldn't have said that to her.        |
| 5. If you had worked harder last month, ...                   | e) you wouldn't be in this predicament.       |
| 6. If he had told you the truth, ...                          | f) you wouldn't be so busy this month.        |
| 7. If you really wanted to have children, ...                 | g) we'd have spent more time sailing.         |
| 8. If he hadn't died so young, ...                            | h) we would be there by now.                  |
| 9. If he didn't work so hard all the time ...                 | i) his wife would never have left him.        |
| 10. If you had eaten a proper breakfast ...                   | j) you would have had them by now.            |

### Exercise 12. Put in the right conditionals.

#### THE SECRET OF A LONG LIFE

Grygori Pilikian recently celebrated his 114<sup>th</sup> birthday and reporters visited him in his mountain village in Georgia to find out the secret of a long life. 'The secret of a long life,' Grygori said, 'is happiness. If you **1**) \_\_\_\_\_ (*be*) happy, you will live a long time.' 'Are you married?' a reporter asked. 'Yes,' Grygori replied. 'I married my third wife when I was 102. If you are happily married, you **2**) \_\_\_\_\_ (*live*) for ever. But for my third wife, I **3**) \_\_\_\_\_ (*die*) years ago.' 'What about smoking and drinking?' a reporter asked. 'Yes, they are important,' Grygori said. 'Don't smoke at all and you **4**) \_\_\_\_\_ (*feel*) well. Drink two glasses of wine a day and you **5**) \_\_\_\_\_ (*be*) healthy and happy.' 'If you **6**) \_\_\_\_\_ (*can live*) your life again, what you **7**) \_\_\_\_\_ (*do*)?' a reporter asked. 'I would do what I have done. If I had had more sense, I **8**) \_\_\_\_\_ (*eat*) more yoghurt!' he chuckled. 'Supposing you **9**) \_\_\_\_\_ (*can change*) one thing in your life what you **10**) \_\_\_\_\_ (*change*)?' another reporter asked. 'Not much,' Grygori replied. 'So you don't have any regrets?' 'Yes, I have one regret,' Grygori replied. 'If I **11**) \_\_\_\_\_ (*know*) I was going to live so long, I **12**) \_\_\_\_\_ (*look after*) myself better!'

### Exercise 13. Use the proper form of the verbs in brackets.

1. If I \_\_\_\_\_ (*be*) you, I \_\_\_\_\_ (*practice*) more often for the upcoming test.
2. If your mother \_\_\_\_\_ (*get*) ill, you will have to cook dinner.
3. If my father \_\_\_\_\_ (*pick me up*), I wouldn't have come too late.
4. My aunt \_\_\_\_\_ (*not be*) ill now, if she \_\_\_\_\_ (*take*) her medicine.
5. My friends \_\_\_\_\_ (*find*) the way then if they \_\_\_\_\_ (*look*) at the map.
6. I \_\_\_\_\_ (*spend*) a lot of money if I won the lottery.
7. What you \_\_\_\_\_ (*do*) if I gave you one million dollars?
8. If I study today, I \_\_\_\_\_ (*go*) to the party tonight.
9. Susan will be late, if the train \_\_\_\_\_ (*delay*).
10. If Laura had studied harder, she \_\_\_\_\_ (*pass*) her exams.
11. Tom will miss his plane if he \_\_\_\_\_ (*not leave*) soon.
12. Susan would have become a teacher if she \_\_\_\_\_ (*go*) to university.
13. If I \_\_\_\_\_ (*not eat*) too much, I wouldn't have felt sick.
14. If you sit in the sun too long, you \_\_\_\_\_ (*get*) sunburned.
15. I would take the Tube every day, if I \_\_\_\_\_ (*live*) in London.
16. If I hadn't gone to bed too late, I \_\_\_\_\_ (*not be*) tired.
17. If I \_\_\_\_\_ (*have*) enough money, I will buy a lot of shoes.
18. You would feel a lot better, if you \_\_\_\_\_ (*not smoke*) so much.
19. My sister might have finished the exams if she \_\_\_\_\_ (*have*) more time.
20. We wouldn't have got lost if the woman \_\_\_\_\_ (*not tell*) us the wrong directions.
21. If I hadn't eaten too much chocolate, I \_\_\_\_\_ (*not get*) all the spots.
22. If we drink too much coffee tonight, we \_\_\_\_\_ (*not sleep*).
23. If I \_\_\_\_\_ (*be*) you, I would follow your mum's advice.
24. I would have given Susan her books, if I \_\_\_\_\_ (*see*) her.
25. I would run away if I \_\_\_\_\_ (*see*) a ghost.
26. If it \_\_\_\_\_ (*rain*), we will cancel the trip.
27. If I were you, I \_\_\_\_\_ (*accept*) the offer.
28. If you \_\_\_\_\_ (*have to*) choose a place to live, which one would you choose?
29. What would you do if you \_\_\_\_\_ (*see*) a robbery?
30. You \_\_\_\_\_ (*tell*) the truth if your mother asks you something?
31. What will happen if you \_\_\_\_\_ (*take*) your father's car?
32. If I \_\_\_\_\_ (*be*) here yesterday, I \_\_\_\_\_ (*come*) to see you.

### Exercise 14. Change the following statements into conditional sentences.

**Model:** I'm hungry now because I didn't eat dinner.

But ... if I'd **eaten** dinner, I **wouldn't be** hungry now.

1. The room is full of flies because you left the door open. But...

2. You are tired this morning because you didn't go to bed at a reasonable hour last night. But...
3. I didn't finish my report yesterday, so I can't begin a new project today. But...
4. Helen is sick because she didn't follow the doctor's orders. But...
5. I'm not you, so I didn't tell him the truth. But...
6. I don't know anything about plumbing, so I didn't fix the leak in the sink myself. But...
7. You weren't listening, so you didn't understand the directions. But...
8. Joe got a ticket because he was driving too fast. But...
9. I was listening to the radio, so I heard the news. But...
10. You were sleeping, so I didn't tell you the news as soon as I heard it. But...
11. She isn't at the meeting because she wasn't told about it. But...
12. I didn't apply for the job. I don't want to work there. But...
13. He didn't take his job seriously. He is unemployed now. But...
14. He didn't train every day. He won't win the race. But...
15. I didn't book seats. We can't go to the concert now. But...
16. You didn't warn me. Now I am in a difficult situation. But...
17. I don't know him very well, so I didn't give him any advice. But...
18. The meal would have been lovely, but you put the oven on too high. If you...
19. I don't know anything about cars, otherwise I would have changed the tyre myself. If I...

**Exercise 15. Finish off the following conditional sentences:**

1. The cake wouldn't have got burnt if...
2. You wouldn't have got into trouble if...
3. Your dress would look nicer if...
4. She would have married him if...
5. I would have come earlier if...
6. He would have got wet through if...
7. She would fix the door knob herself if...
8. He would drive straight home if...
9. I would take her to the party if...
10. It would be better for all of us if...
11. If it hadn't been for the rain...
12. If it were not for the coming wedding...
13. If it hadn't been for his advice...
14. If it hadn't been for his departure...
15. If it were not for his family...
16. If your mother were to ask you about me...
17. If I had known you were here...
18. If you would not interfere...

19. If we could afford it...
20. If I were you...
21. If it hadn't been raining...
22. If we didn't study grammar...

<b>STUDY</b>	<p><b>What if, suppose/supposing, assuming</b> can be used in all types of subordinate clauses but they are more common in sentences of unreal condition.</p> <p><i>Supposing you were fired. What would you do? Предположим, Вас бы уволили. Что бы Вы делали?</i></p> <p><i>Suppose no one had been there? = What if no one had been there? Предположим/а что если бы там никого не было?</i></p>
--------------	---

**Exercise 16. Use the correct verb form instead of the infinitives in brackets.**

1. **Supposing** you \_\_\_\_\_ (*have*) the chance to spend a year in space, would you take it?
2. **What if** we \_\_\_\_\_ (*decide*) to run away right now and never come back?
3. **Suppose** all your friends \_\_\_\_\_ (*say*) bad things about you behind your back and you \_\_\_\_\_ (*find out*). What would you do?
4. I wouldn't pay so much for the cruise **unless** I \_\_\_\_\_ (*know*) what it involved.
5. **Supposing** you \_\_\_\_\_ (*fail*) your exams, what would you do?
6. **What if** everyone in the world \_\_\_\_\_ (*speak*) the same language?
7. **Suppose** we \_\_\_\_\_ (*just tell*) that a huge meteor was on its way to Earth. What would be the best thing to do?
8. **Supposing** you \_\_\_\_\_ (*wake up*) on morning and \_\_\_\_\_ (*find*) you'd gone back in time, how would you feel?
9. **What if** they \_\_\_\_\_ (*not turn up*) to meet you, what would you have done?
10. I wouldn't apologise **unless** she \_\_\_\_\_ (*admit*) her mistake first.
11. **Imagine** you \_\_\_\_\_ (*have*) any money or means of getting any. What on earth could you do?
12. **What if** the Internet \_\_\_\_\_ (*not invent*)? Wouldn't it be weird?
13. **Supposing** the sun \_\_\_\_\_ (*stop*) shining right now, how long would it take for us to realise?
14. **Suppose** you \_\_\_\_\_ (*can*) travel back in time. Where would you go?
15. **Suppose** it \_\_\_\_\_ (*prove*) that aliens existed and were living among us!
16. I do realize it'll probably never happen but **imagine** her song \_\_\_\_\_ (*become*) really popular!
17. **What if** you \_\_\_\_\_ (*give*) three wishes by a genie in a bottle? What would you wish for?
18. I know we can't travel faster than the speed of light but **suppose** for a moment that we \_\_\_\_\_ (*be*) able to.
19. **Imagine** that humans \_\_\_\_\_ (*not can*) speak. How do you think we'd communicate?

**Exercise 17. Say what you would do in the following situations.**

**Model:** Suppose someone stole your mobile phone.

If someone **stole** my mobile phone I **would report** it to the police immediately.

1. Suppose you left a restaurant with the wrong umbrella.
2. Suppose a waiter in a restaurant overcharged you.
3. Suppose you missed the last bus home.
4. Suppose you missed your station on the train.
5. Suppose you got lost in a big city.
6. Suppose someone stole your wallet.
7. Suppose you lost your passport.
8. Suppose a stranger asked you for a lift at night.
9. Suppose someone offered you a briefcase full of money.
10. Suppose you got stuck in a lift.

**Exercise 18. Comment on the Oblique Moods in the following sentences.**

1. **Would** you **repeat** once again?
2. He **would have been arrested** if he **had tried** to leave the country.
3. But for their help, it **would have taken** more days to get through with it.
4. **Would** you **do** it differently if you **had** to do it over again?
5. I **would ask** him more politely in your place.
6. 'If I **told** you I was fine, I'd **be lying**.'
7. **Would** you **have helped** him if you **had known** he wasn't guilty?
8. Spector believes 'everyone **would be** healthier if they **had** some fermented foods every day of their lives.'
9. I **would have joined** your company if it **hadn't been** for my brother's unexpected arrival.
10. But for my smile, he **wouldn't have believed** me.
11. She **would do** all that is possible, however she is not present.
12. I'm lucky that you don't have one, because it **would drive** me crazy if you **did**.
13. 'It **would help** if you **looked** at me when I'm talking.'
14. They **would have perished**, but for the quick thinking of the driver.
15. You **would earn** more money now, if you **had invested** it more wisely then.
16. 'I promise you, if I **could bring** my feelings back for Dad and **make** you two happy, I **would**, but it doesn't work like that.'
17. He **would** probably **starve** to death if he **were living** alone.
18. 'Jesus, Pete, if I **wanted** to tell my side of the story, I'd **have done** it a whole lot better, don't you think?'
19. 'If I'd **known** more about them, I'd **be** more confused.'

## Exercise 19. Translate into English.

1. Вы бы сейчас лучше говорили по-английски, если бы прилежно учились в университете.
2. На его месте я бы поступил иначе.
3. Если бы я не торопился, я бы остался с вами еще на несколько часов.
4. Если бы картину повесили ровно, она бы не упала вам на голову.
5. Если бы вчера вечером вы ей этого не сказали, она бы не была сейчас такой расстроенной.
6. Если бы я знала, что встречу его, то я бы постаралась выглядеть лучше.
7. Если бы вы были внимательнее на прошлом занятии, вы бы сейчас лучше знали материал.
8. А что, если план вдруг не сработает?
9. Если бы вы подготовились к контрольной, вы бы получили лучшую отметку.
10. Если бы их самолет взлетел вовремя, они бы летели уже два часа.
11. Если бы ты не был таким рассеянным, ты бы не забыл о нашей встрече.
12. Она бы никогда не согласилась работать сверхурочно, если бы ей так срочно не нужны были деньги.
13. Если бы у меня вчера с собой было больше денег, я бы купила это платье.
14. Если бы вы выполнили все рекомендации врача, то уже выздоровели бы и сейчас бы работали с нами.
15. Если бы он посещал занятия целый год, то бы получил зачет без проблем.
16. Если бы вы пришли на пять минут раньше, вы бы застали его.
17. Если бы вы приняли лекарство, вы были бы сейчас здоровы.
18. Вы бы сегодня хорошо себя чувствовали, если бы вчера легли раньше спать.
19. Если бы ты была более тактичным человеком, ты бы не сказала ей этого.
20. Мы бы связались с тобой, если бы ты не отключила свой телефон.
21. Если бы ты не был так занят вчера, мы сходили бы куда-нибудь пообедать.
22. Предположим, что побочные эффекты препарата очень серьезные. В этом случае вы бы продолжили принимать данное лекарство?
23. Если бы вы регулярно работали над языком, у вас не было бы пробелов в знаниях.
24. Даже если бы я закончил переводить пятую главу вчера вечером, я бы все равно не успел перевести всю книгу вовремя.
25. Если бы я не был постоянно уставшим, я бы не допустил такой элементарной ошибки.
26. Она бы все равно не написала сочинение грамотно, даже если бы можно было воспользоваться орфографическим словарем.
27. Расследование не закончилось бы к концу месяца, даже если бы мы работали день и ночь.
28. Она бы все равно выглядела прекрасно, даже если бы ей пришлось двое суток провести в дороге.

**Exercise 20. Discuss the following questions in pairs or in small groups using Subjunctive II in adverbial clauses of unreal condition.**

1. If you bumped your car into another car, but nobody saw you do it, would you leave your name and address?
2. What talent would you most like to have which you haven't got?
3. Obviously, you are ecstatically happy being you, but supposing you could be anyone else in the world, who would you be and why?
4. If you could be invisible for a day, what would you do and why?
5. If you could change anything in the world, what would change and why?
6. If you could spend a day with any celebrity, who would it be and what questions would you ask that person?
7. If you were given a chance to go to the moon, would you go? Why or why not?
8. If you were invited to have tea with the Queen of England, what would say?
9. If you could change anything about your personality, what would you change and why?
10. If you could change anything in your life, what would you change and why?

**LESSON 10**

**ADVERBIAL CLAUSES OF COMPARISON AND PROBLEMATIC CONDITION**

<b>STUDY</b>	<p>When the verb in the main clause before <b>as if / as though</b> is in the present or present perfect indicative, we only use <b>Subjunctive II</b> for comparisons that we know <b>aren't true</b>:</p> <p><i>She behaves as if she were really wealthy.</i> (= She is not really wealthy.)</p> <p>For comparisons that are <b>possible</b> we use a present or present perfect <b>indicative</b> form of the verb:</p> <p><i>She looks as if she's really wealthy.</i> (= it is very possible that she is wealthy.)</p> <p>When the verb in the main clause before <b>as if / as though</b> is in the past indicative, the comparison in the subordinate clause may be either <b>true (past indicative)</b> or <b>hypothetical (Subjunctive II)</b>:</p> <p><i>She looked as if she was really wealthy.</i> (= but I knew she wasn't / perhaps she was)</p>
--------------	--

**Exercise 1. Comment on Subjunctive II in the following predicative clauses and adverbial clauses of comparison.**

**Model:** It was as if she **were trying** to tell him something.

**Were trying** is used in its **non-perfect Subjunctive II** form. It is used in the **predicative** clause of a complex sentence after the conjunction **as if**. The non-perfect form shows that the unreal action is **simultaneous** with the action shown by the finite verb **was**.

He speaks as if **he had never seen** me before.

**Had never seen** is used in its **perfect Subjunctive II** form. It is used in the adverbial clause of **comparison** of a complex sentence after the conjunction **as if**. The perfect form of Subjunctive II refers the action to the **past**/shows **priority** to the finite verb **speaks**.

1. She looks happy **as if she had received** a present.
2. He looked **as though he were** ill.
3. Her face was so white that she looked **as if she were going** to faint.
4. I felt **as though I were making** a bad joke.
5. Nina shook her head, feeling **as if she was** fast **sinking** into insanity.
6. It looked **as if he weren't** interested in his uninvited guest.
7. He felt **as though she didn't** love him.
8. He looked **as though he knew** it to be true.
9. He sat in his chair looking **as if he were going** to be sick.
10. It seemed **as though he had worked** an entire day.
11. It was **as though nothing had happened**.
12. I feel **as if I had eaten** too much.
13. Samantha looks **as if she had fallen in love**.
14. He felt awkward **as if everybody were looking** at him.
15. I'm sorry to talk about you **as if you weren't** here.
16. Try to behave, my dear, **as if nothing had happened**.
17. She spoke to me **as if we had never quarrelled**.
18. Everybody treats me **as if I had** a disease.
19. Adrian felt **as if he were** suddenly **transported** into a different world.
20. He began to shake **as though he were** cold.
21. She told me what to do **as if she were** a doctor.
22. It was **as though they had arrived** on the planet at the same time and **accompanied** each other through every day.
23. You speak about him **as if he had been cured**.
24. The girl got very excited **as though she had never travelled** by air.
25. I think, now, how odd it was that, when he went from London to Canterbury, he **should have talked** as if he **were going** to the farthest limits of the earth.

**Exercise 2. Put the verbs in brackets into the correct form in the following predicative clauses. Pay attention to the comments given in brackets.**

1. He behaves **as if** she \_\_\_\_\_ (*be*) the boss here. (*But she isn't the boss or we don't know whether she is the boss or not.*)
2. He talks **as though** he \_\_\_\_\_ (*know*) who Jane was. (*But he doesn't know or we don't know whether he knows or not.*)
3. He looks at me **as if** I \_\_\_\_\_ (*be*) guilty. (*But I am not guilty.*)
4. He talks about Rome **as though** he \_\_\_\_\_ (*be*) there himself. (*But he hasn't or probably hasn't or we don't know whether he has or not.*)

5. I remember stepping off the boat in New York as if it \_\_\_\_\_ (be) yesterday.
6. He behaves as if he \_\_\_\_\_ (own) the place. (*But he doesn't own it or probably doesn't own it or we don't know whether he owns it or not.*)
7. He orders me about as if I \_\_\_\_\_ (be) his wife. (*But I am not.*)
8. *His older brother always treats him as if he \_\_\_\_\_ (be) a child. (He is not a child, but his brother often talks to him like a child.)*
9. She spoke to me **as if** she \_\_\_\_\_ (know) me, but I had never met her before.
10. He was crying as though he \_\_\_\_\_ (be) mad. (*But he isn't mad.*)
11. I can't put up with your behaviour. You order about as if you \_\_\_\_\_ (be) the boss, which you are not.
12. *Is Andrea feeling well? I spoke to her today and it sounded as if she \_\_\_\_\_ (be) getting a cold.*
13. *The airplanes were so close together it looked as if they \_\_\_\_\_ (be) going to crash!*
14. *She's behaving as if she \_\_\_\_\_ (be) the Queen of England!*
15. She described it as if she \_\_\_\_\_ (see) it all with her own eyes.
16. She loves them as though they \_\_\_\_\_ (be) her children. (*But she is childless.*)
17. He looks as if he \_\_\_\_\_ (be) old and sick. (*But he is 25 and quite healthy.*)

**Exercise 3. Complete the following sentences using *as if*-clauses.**

1. You look tired as if...
2. We felt at home with her as if...
3. The room looked untidy as if...
4. I don't understand you at all as if...
5. Everybody was silent as if...
6. They burst into laughter as though...
7. She was speaking in a low voice as if...
8. I was as fond of him as though...
9. They stared at her in surprise as though...
10. He speaks Spanish as if...
11. He looked healthy as though...
12. He treated his family as if...
13. 'Katja,' she repeated loudly as though...
14. She was twenty-five and she behaved as if...
15. And sometimes Mario would sigh heavily as if...
16. He looked around his bathroom as if...

**Exercise 4. Supply the following *as if*-clauses with suitable main clauses.**

1. ...as if I didn't share his opinion.
2. ...as if I had said the wrong thing.
3. ...as if you were an old man.
4. ...as if he had never seen it before.

5. ...as though his voice had startled her.
6. ...as if he had caught a cold.
7. ...as if his thoughts were far away.
8. ...as though she hadn't slept a wink.
9. ...as if she were eight.
- 10...an though nobody lived here.
- 11...as if they were bored to death.
- 12...as if we were best friends.
- 13...as if he had too many problems.
- 14...as though her life depended on it.
- 15...as if they weren't attentive to him.
- 16...as though she were looking for somebody.

**Exercise 5. Rewrite the following sentences using *as if*-clauses.**

1. Suddenly her merry laugh was heard as if from the clouds.
2. He glanced around as if in search of something.
3. For some minutes he stood as if waiting for something.
4. He circled her as if inspecting a sculpture.
5. She lifted one slender hand as if to hold him.
6. The old man leapt up as if to run.
7. She looked at me thoughtfully as if taking in seriously what I had said.
8. I hate secrets and I don't like to be treated like a child.
9. She hesitated, as if considering something.
10. When Adrian's son saw me, he turned his shoulder as if to keep me – and bad luck – away.
11. She looked at me, as if trying to assess my motives and my truthfulness.
12. He runs a hand through his hair again, radiating frustration as if waging some internal battle.
13. Signora nodded as if to agree.
14. She saw Suzi pause and bite her lip as if to decide something.
15. He held both hands over his eyes and applied a steady pressure there as if to crush memory into place.
16. He marched them on to the plane as if taking them into war.

**Exercise 6. Translate into English using Subjunctive II in adverbial clauses of comparison.**

1. Он рассмеялся, как будто я сказал что-то смешное.
2. Она разговаривает с ним так, словно они знают друг друга целую вечность.
3. Почему ты ведешь себя так, словно что-то скрываешь от нас?
4. Он улыбнулся, словно прочитал мои мысли и узнал обо всем.
5. Я уже взрослый. Почему ты все еще обращаешься со мной так, словно я ребенок?

6. Мы не обратили внимания на слова Чарльза, словно они не были важны, словно никто их не слышал.
7. Лектор начал говорить медленно и красноречиво, словно старался с самого начала завоевать внимание студентов.
8. Он тяжело вздохнул, как будто вспомнил что-то неприятное.
9. Она танцует так, будто настоящая балерина.
10. Вы так говорите, как будто не одобряете наших планов на будущее.
11. Пирог был таким необычным на вкус, словно в него положили все пряности Востока.
12. В комнате было душно, как будто окна не открывались целую вечность.
13. Он ведет себя так, как будто знаком со всеми присутствующими.
14. Она разговаривала с нами так, как будто мы были в чем-то виноваты.
15. Он покраснел, как будто его смутило мое замечание.
16. Девочка смотрела на отца так, как будто вот-вот заплачет.
17. Он говорил о книге с таким важным видом, как будто сам был ее автором.
18. Я помню этот роман, словно только вчера его прочитал.
19. Вы говорите так, словно вам не жалко собственной дочери.
20. Женщина шла медленно, осторожно, словно пол был скользким.

### **Exercise 7. Comment on the Suppositional Mood in adverbial clauses of problematic condition.**

**Model:** If I **should see** him, I'll tell him the news.

**Should see** is used in **the Suppositional Mood** in its **non-perfect** form. It is used in the adverbial clause of **problematic condition** to denote an action that is very unlikely to happen. The non-perfect form of the Suppositional Mood refers the action to the **future**. In the **main clause** the **future simple** is used.

1. Shuddering inwardly, he glanced around the diner. Fairly good crowd for a weeknight, and **if** anyone **should happen** to look over, they'd detect nothing about these two.
2. People are worried that **should** the extradition bill **pass**, it would bring Hong Kong more decisively under China's control.
3. Researchers have been reluctant to destroy lab samples of deadly viruses in case they are needed to create a vaccine **should** the disease ever **re-emerge**.
4. I leave my drumstick, **should** it ever **be found**, to my mother.
5. 'Thursday,' Laddy said, **in case** anyone **should mistake** the day.
6. I have had many young attractive girlfriends and **should I want** company I feel sure I could find more.
7. If you **should come across** this expression, remember the context it's used in.
8. If it **should be** wet they would stay at home.
9. If you **should find** another way out, will you inform me?
10. If you **should meet** him, give him my best regards.

**Exercise 8. Supply suitable verb forms in the following adverbial clauses of problematic condition.**

1. If you \_\_\_\_\_ (*have*) any problem, please let me know.
2. If the engine \_\_\_\_\_ (*catch*) a fire, use the ejector seat.
3. I'm taking an umbrella in case it \_\_\_\_\_ (*rain*).
4. If you \_\_\_\_\_ (*see*) him following you again, remember to tell me.
5. If you \_\_\_\_\_ (*read*) Stephen King before going to bed, you might find it difficult to fall asleep.
6. If you \_\_\_\_\_ (*drink*) too much coffee, you'll stay awake all night long.
7. If it \_\_\_\_\_ (*rain*) heavily, the match might be put off for a week.
8. And what if he (*forget*) to post the letter?
9. And what if they \_\_\_\_\_ (*perish*)? – Heaven \_\_\_\_\_ (*forbid*)!
10. If he \_\_\_\_\_ (*change*) his mind, no one will blame him.
11. If you \_\_\_\_\_ (*stay*) there over a year, I would wait for you.
12. I'll give you my telephone number in case you \_\_\_\_\_ (*want*) to get in touch with me again.
13. If anything \_\_\_\_\_ (*happen*) to Harris, you are the Book of Ecclesiastes.
14. If you ever \_\_\_\_\_ (*need*) help, remember where I am.
15. If anything \_\_\_\_\_ (*happen*) to make you change your mind, let me know.
16. If you ever \_\_\_\_\_ (*meet*) her, give her my best regards.
17. 'If anyone \_\_\_\_\_ (*phone*)', she said to me, 'tell them I won't be here until tomorrow.'
18. We'll go skiing in the mountains if it \_\_\_\_\_ (*snow*).
19. If I \_\_\_\_\_ (*arrive*) home earlier than planned, I'll phone you.
20. If you \_\_\_\_\_ (*see*) Ann, will you give her this message?

**Exercise 9. Arthur worries all the time. Look what Arthur is thinking and write sentences with *If ... should ... , ... might ...* .**

1. What if the holiday company goes bankrupt? (*lose my holiday*)
2. What if it's foggy at the airport? (*plane not able to take off*)
3. What if my luggage was put on the wrong plane? (*never see it again*)
4. What if my house is broken into? (*lose everything*)
5. What if I lost my money? (*have to come home early*)
6. What if I lost my passport? (*not be able to get home*)
7. What if I had an accident? (*have to go into hospital*)
8. What if it rains all the time? (*have a terrible holiday*)
9. What if everything goes well? (*have nothing to worry about*)
10. What if I happen to fall in love? (*get married*)

**Exercise 10. Translate the sentences.**

1. Вдруг самолет задержится, вот тебе журнал, чтобы скоротать время.
2. Если вдруг пойдет дождь, я останусь дома.
3. Мы будем на катке на случай, если ты захочешь к нам присоединиться.

4. Пусть вам попадетсЯ счастливый билет на экзамене!
5. Мы успели бы на тот автобус, если бы ушли из театра на пять минут раньше.
6. Случись мне увидеть этот словарь, я его обязательно куплю.
7. Если вдруг Джон зайдет, передай ему эти книги.
8. Если бы только она успела на поезд, ей не пришлось бы ждать еще два часа на вокзале.
9. Случись вам побывать в Италии, обязательно посетите Венецию.
10. Если ты вдруг первым узнаешь результаты теста, дай мне знать.
11. Случись мне увидеть этот альбом, я бы его купил.
12. Если вдруг возникнет какая-нибудь трудность, позвони мне тотчас же.
13. Он улыбался как будто не веря тому, что я говорю.
14. В первую минуту он испугался, что Фред сядет с ним рядом и продолжит разговор.
15. Нам пора приняться за работу.
16. Как жаль, что я не могу рассказать тебе об этом.
17. Он бы еще многое рассказал, но устал.
18. Людям со слабым сердцем рекомендуется принимать эти таблетки два раза в день.
19. В случае, если ты вдруг забудешь мой адрес, позвони мне.
20. Случись так, что она откажется с тобой разговаривать, не унывай. Время лечит.

## LESSON 11

### INVERSION IN ADVERBIAL CLAUSES OF CONDITION.

#### ADVERBIAL CLAUSES OF PROBLEMATIC CONCESSION AND PURPOSE

<b>STUDY</b>	<p>We can't use inversion in adverbial clauses of real condition. The first step is to make the condition problematic. Then we get rid of <b>if</b> and place <b>should</b> in its place. <i>If danger comes... → If danger should come... → Should danger come...</i></p> <p>In adverbial clauses of unreal condition we look for <b>was/were</b> or <b>had</b>, get rid of <b>if</b> and place <b>were</b> (not <b>was</b>) or <b>had</b> in its place: <i>If I was free... → Were I free...</i> <i>If I had known that... → Had I known that...</i></p> <p>In adverbial clauses of unreal condition with non-perfect Subjunctive II form different from <b>were</b> we first substitute the verb with the phrasal modal <b>were to do</b>: <i>If I went... → If I were to go... → Were I to go...</i></p> <p>In case the form of the verb in the adverbial clause of condition is <b>negative</b>, it is <b>not contracted</b> with the auxiliary verb, the negative particle <b>not</b> follows the subject: <i>If I shouldn't see him... → Should I not see him...</i> <i>If I were not free... → Were I not free...</i> <i>If I hadn't known that → Had I not known that...</i></p>
--------------	---

**Exercise 1. Rewrite the following sentences using inversion in clauses of unreal condition.**

**Model:** If you were more attentive, you wouldn't make mistakes.

**Were** you more attentive, you wouldn't make mistakes.

If the government permitted this, the opposition would be most indignant.

**Were** the government **to permit** this, the opposition would be most indignant.

If it hadn't been the ending, the book would have been perfect.

**Had it not been** the ending, the book would have been perfect.

If only we had known, we might have been able to do something.

**Had we but known**, we might have been able to do something.

1. If you had done your homework, we would have gone to the cinema.
2. If you read more English books, you would know English better.
3. If you worked harder, you would learn much more.
4. If you went in for sports, it would do you a lot of good.
5. If you hadn't taken the money, you wouldn't be in prison now.
6. I would have enjoyed the film more if we had had better seats.
7. If it were not so late, I would tell a story to the children.
8. If you had read the biography of this writer, you would understand his works better.
9. This is what I would choose myself, if I were ever given the opportunity to shop at Cartier.
10. If we were all carrying biological traces of our grandfathers' or great-grandfathers' war traumas, it would certainly be a gloomy picture.
11. 'If you'd given me a pen – that would be a suitable graduation present.'
12. If he were alive I would still be there.
13. Perhaps Grania might have loved him too if things had only been different.
14. If you were out in Italy you'd have to be able to say all that to people like we do here.
15. 'Kathy Clarke, I tell you if I had been burned at the stake I'd have said you were the last person on earth to have adventures.'
16. They wouldn't have missed their plane if they hadn't overslept.

**Exercise 2. Rewrite the following sentences using inversion in clauses of problematic condition.**

**Model:** If danger comes, we shall be prepared to meet it.

**Should** danger **come**, we shall be prepared to meet it.

I would be more than happy to take you with us – if you should wish.

I would be more than happy to take you with us – **should** you **wish**.

1. If you need anything, just ask.

2. What shall I do if she refuses to listen to me?
3. I will be happy to advise you if you ask me.
4. If you don't work hard you are going to fail.
5. If there is something urgent, call us.
6. If he insists, ask him to give all the reasons.
7. If you get lost in the area, ask a policeman.
8. If something goes wrong, we'll hire a private detective.
9. I think we can work very well together if it comes down to it.
10. If you hear from him, I'd like to know it. Just how he is.
11. If there are many problems by chance, we are ready to help.
12. If I get the job, I'll invite you to the restaurant.
13. If you decide to sell your country house, my brother will be willing to buy it.
14. If you should be interested in trying to make me understand your reasons, you know where to find me.
15. She reminded her she was covered by the company's health insurance, if she should need it.
16. She asked if you could use one of your police holds on Pamela if she should decide to give Bill another biff.
17. We've got a perimeter search going on, but if that doesn't turn up the weapon or something telling us who she is, we'll do a grid of the entire place and take it in sections.

**Exercise 3. Rewrite the following sentences using inversion in clauses of condition.**

1. He has threatened to resign if the government is defeated.
2. If they agreed, we could make rapid progress.
3. The company will refund the money if you change your mind.
4. The exhibition might have closed if they hadn't found new sponsors.
5. I would refuse to cooperate if I were in your position.
6. Please inform the doctor immediately if she shows signs of improvement.
7. They would have realised their mistake if only they had stayed until the end.
8. You may assume we have agreed if you do not hear from us by Friday.
9. Everyone would be able to do it if it were that simple.
10. The hospital can switch to an emergency generator if the need should arise.
11. If you should need to consult me again, you can contact me at this number.
12. If you should be late once again, you'll lose your job.
13. If it were not for the fact that his father is on the board of directors, he would never have got the job.
14. If such a merger were ever to be proposed, it would undoubtedly be referred to the Monopolies Commission.
15. If it were not for the expense involved, I would go there by air.
16. If it hadn't been for your laziness, you could have finished the work by now.
17. If he had taken a little more time to think, he might have acted more sensibly.

18. If the attempted assassination had succeeded, there would almost certainly have been civil and political chaos.
19. If you drink too much coffee, you won't be able to sleep.
20. If you'd brought a map, we wouldn't have got lost.
21. If I were you, I wouldn't tell anyone about it.
22. If he'd known about the meeting, I'm sure he would have come.
23. If you come across Paul, tell him I want to see him.
24. If the driver of the train hadn't reacted so quickly, the accident would have been much worse.
25. 'Could you imagine if I was to tell a story like that about somebody on the other side,' he added. 'The police would be knocking on my door within 10 minutes.'

**Exercise 4. Complete the sentences to make them true for you. Discuss your sentences with a partner.**

1. Had I been born in a different country...
2. Were I rich...
3. Had my parents not met...
4. Should I decide to teach English Grammar...
5. Had I started learning English earlier...
6. Were I a writer...
7. Had I been born a thousand years ago...
8. Should we miss the train...
9. If I lost my passport...
10. If you should need to get in touch with me later...
11. Had I listened to my parents' advice when I was younger...
12. If I could be a character from a movie...
13. Should it rain on Sunday...
14. Had I been born a member of the opposite sex...
15. If I had a time machine...
16. If it should rain tomorrow...
17. Had she given me her number...
18. If he should turn down your offer...

**Exercise 5. Comment on the Suppositional Mood in adverbial clauses of problematic condition and purpose.**

**Model:** Bertha dared to say nothing lest he **should hear** tears in her voice.

**Should hear** is used in **the Suppositional Mood** in its **non-perfect** form. It is used in the adverbial clause of **purpose** of a complex sentence after the conjunction **lest**. The non-perfect form of the Suppositional Mood shows that the action is **posterior** to the finite verb **dared**.

1. Besides, there's an old saying: peek not through a knothole, lest you **be** vexed.

2. If anything **should happen** to her, you've no idea how you might react.
3. Don't sit around on your own. Join in lest you **should miss** all the fun!
4. He flapped his hands towards the cubicles; at the same time he went over to the entrance door and jammed a silver coin underneath it – to make a scraping noise if anyone **should come** in.
5. He had written his answers on a separate sheet of paper lest anyone in the family **should find** and **read** his confessional of worries and anxieties and sleeplessness.
6. He knew that Potting had a panic alert on his iPhone which would send a surveillance unit over at once, **should he need** it.
7. He turned his back to her, so that she **should not see** his face.
8. I intend to run through both of the investigations, and the individual investigative leads for each case are here, **should there be** any further questions.
9. It meant that Gordon and Jemima had been allowed ponies which could graze freely upon the Forest but the proviso was that land near the house had to be kept free for the ponies **should they need** to be removed from the forest for any reason.
10. She prefers to solve problems as fast as possible lest they **should become** too big.
11. She sent a message to some friends asking them to look in so that she **shouldn't be** alone with Ed in the evening.
12. She took Kathy to the Museum of Modern Art and on her day off they went on a three-hour bus tour of Dublin. Just so that we **know** about where we live, Fran had said.
13. **Should** Meredith **take** the rail tickets and the hotel receipt to the local police or to the Scotland Yard cops, she **would only be repeating** what someone else had told her.
14. The passports have since found their home in the toaster, lest we **forget** again.
15. **Should** she actually **be** in, Meredith had her excuse ready: Came to say sorry for being such a pest.
16. The West Town Road Arcade's CCTV tapes from that day are grainy, making absolute identification of the boys who took John Dresser impossible, **should** such identification **rely** on the tapes alone.

**Exercise 6. Paraphrase the following so as to use Subjunctive I or the Suppositional Mood in adverbial clauses of purpose.**

**Model:** Do the exercise carefully so as not to rewrite it. (*so that*)

Do the exercise carefully **so that** you **shouldn't** rewrite it.

1. He will have a car sent down to your place tonight to take you straight to the station. (*so that*)
2. Copy out the examples and study them thoroughly so as not to make mistakes in the construction. (*so that*)

3. They wrote her a letter to remind her of her promise. (*so that*)
4. The enclosure was attached to the essential text of the letter for fear of it getting misplaced. (*lest*)
5. You will have to close either the door or the window; otherwise there will be a draught. (*so that*)
6. We shall start earlier so as not to miss the train. (*in order that*)
7. I have repeated this for you not to misunderstand me. (*lest*)
8. The guide marked the path carefully for the party not to get lost on their way back. (*in order that*)
9. They spoke in a whisper so as not to wake anyone in the ward. (*lest*)
10. I have put everything in writing. I want you to know exactly how things stand. (*so that*)
11. He left the letter on the hall table. He wanted me to be sure of seeing it when I came in. (*so that*)
12. The two students talked in undertones. They didn't want the teacher to overhear what they were saying. (*so that*)
13. The police issued a warning. They wanted the public to be aware of the danger. (*in order that*)
14. He keeps his wife's jewels in the bank. He fears the house may be burgled. (*lest*)
15. He sent his son to university. He wanted him to have the best possible chance of a good career. (*so that*)
16. I don't want you to think I'm not telling the truth. I have brought two witnesses with me. (*lest*)
17. I asked you to come here. I wanted you to have an opportunity to explain things yourself. (*so that*)
18. Loudspeakers were fixed in an adjoining hall. Everyone would have an opportunity to hear the speech. (*so that*)

**Exercise 7. Complete the following sentences using your own ideas.**

1. I want to start early so that...
2. I'll read a fairy-tale for a child so that...
3. You must arrange everything beforehand lest...
4. Go to bed early and rise early so that...
5. I read a lot of books about Charles Dickens so that...
6. ...lest his imagination take him back to that moment.
7. Let's walk faster lest...
8. The bus is due in five minutes. We'll have to run so that...
9. Put the milk into the fridge lest...
10. Cut your expenses lest...
11. Eat more fruit and vegetables so that...
12. You've got to use it with care lest...

13. She was killing time so that...
14. ...lest the boss protest the oddity of this purchase.
15. She sat down opposite him and turned the magazine so that...
16. Gordon had told Cliff to take a break so that...

### **Exercise 8. Translate into English.**

1. Придерживайте шляпу рукой, чтобы она не слетела.
2. Том изложил план очень подробно, чтобы все было ясно и не вызывало сомнений.
3. Если бы я был более откровенным, этого недопонимания просто бы не возникло.
4. Зажгите еще одну люстру, чтобы в зале стало светлее.
5. Будь осторожен с ключом. Если ты вдруг потеряешь его, мы никогда не откроем сейф.
6. После смерти поэта в его квартире ничего не переставлялось, чтобы все выглядело так, как было при жизни творца слова.
7. Она сделала вид, будто ищет что-то в бумагах, чтобы никто не заметил ее волнения.
8. Случись так, что ключ потеряется, ты не сможешь сделать дубликат.
9. Он поставил будильник на шесть часов, чтобы не проспать.
10. Если вдруг ни на одно твоё письмо не ответят, не падай духом.
11. Стены собора были недавно реставрированы для того, чтобы фрески вновь обрели свой прежний вид.
12. Она так устала, что вынуждена была прислониться к стене, чтобы не упасть.
13. Она записала название лекарства на случай, если забудет его.
14. Случись тебе побывать в Полоцке, обязательно посети Софийский собор.
15. Барбара встала рано и пошла на кухню, чтобы не разбудить младшую сестру.
16. Она отвернулась, чтобы он не понял, что у нее льются слезы.
17. Говори громче, чтобы все тебя хорошо слышали.
18. Если бы у меня вчера было больше свободного времени, я бы встретился с друзьями.
19. Она сдержала слезы, чтобы не показаться смешной.
20. Если бы нам было суждено встретиться, мы бы не разминулись тогда в Лондоне.
21. Не забудь выключить газ, чтобы не было пожара.
22. Она боялась, как бы ее не обманули.
23. Запри дверь, чтобы нам никто не мешал.
24. Если бы это лекарство было без серьезных побочных эффектов, врач бы уже давным-давно назначил мне его.
25. Случись так, что машина не заведется, вызывай эвакуатор.

**LESSON 12**  
**REVISION OF THE OBLIQUE MOODS**

**Exercise 1. Comment on the Oblique Moods.**

1. She took Kathy to the Museum of Modern Art and on her day off they went on a three-hour bus tour of Dublin. Just so that we **know** about where we live, Fran had said.
2. Indeed, **had it not been** for Michael Spargo's overlarge mustard anorak, there is a chance that John's abductors **might have gone** unapprehended.
3. 'There's only a certain set of problems for which you need to build new algorithms,' Mr Vogels tells me, suggesting for everything else, companies **should just use** Amazon.
4. I think it's time his grandfather **stopped** receiving handkerchiefs and ties.
5. Once or twice recently Nell had suggested casually that Aidan **should make** it into a study for himself.
6. That meant I'd have to be gone from Eden Fallows by four o'clock tomorrow afternoon at the latest. If only I **knew** where.
7. 'Listen, now.' Suzi was anxious there **should be** no misunderstandings.
8. Around seventy, she had the stature and aura of someone much younger, someone used to people noticing her. Someone like Caroline, **had** Caroline **lived** to see her eighth decade.
9. He had fought hard for her and it was time she **repaid** him by delivering on her promise.
10. It was not strange that he **should** so heartlessly **have betrayed** his friends' confidence.
11. 'You see, I wish I **cared** about things like you do.'
12. 'Just black for Mrs Duffy,' Bill called as if he **were giving** a command to the staff.
13. He thought it was strange someone **should knock** at his door so late at night.
14. He had written his answers on a separate sheet of paper **lest** anyone in the family **should find** and **read** his confessional of worries and anxieties and sleeplessness.
15. For some reason she kept walking down the Liffey after O'Connell Bridge. It was almost as if she **were following** the crowd, and there she found Temple Bar.
16. If only I **had kept** my mouth shut!
17. 'We'd **better hide** all of this from them, then,' I tell her.
18. 'It's a bit of luck that I **should be** in London when you turned up,' he said.
19. I cry myself to sleep at night, wishing I **hadn't walked out**, wishing that he **could be** different, wishing that we **were** together.
20. He suggested the venue **should change** its name to The Theatre.
21. Her palms were damp, but the last thing she intended to do was to wipe them casually along her skirt. **Should** she **do** so, she knew that Hillier would see that her hands were shaking as well.

22. Again she wished she **had not spoken**.
23. Skelton wondered if it **were** only his fancy that there was something very like a threat in the tone in which Grange uttered these words.
24. 'It's time you **learned** some respect!' – 'It's time you **earned** it,' said Harry.
25. He was about Signora's age, she supposed, but red-faced and looked as if the years **had taken** their toll.
26. 'I should have just been honest with you from the start.' – 'I wish you **had been**,' she said.
27. Yes, alas, she's a teenager now, Jeannine said. Heaven **help** us all.
28. No, you see, she said, you can get in a, what would you call it, a mind-set about these things. You can start to believe that your life is defined by your foreignness. You think everything **would be** different if only you **belonged**. 'If only I **were** back home,' you say, and you forget that you **wouldn't belong** there either, after all these years. It **wouldn't be** home at all anymore.
29. If only she **would nap**, Bitsy said, I believe I could get on top of things here. But she refuses. I lay her down in her crib and she starts shrieking.
30. She laughed pleasantly, as if she **were laughing** with him not at him.
31. Maybe his own children were at university and he wished that others **would** also **get** the chance.
32. But the reset is almost complete each time. Sure, it leaves a residue. The Ocher Card Man said so, and I believe him. But if I don't make any big changes... if I do nothing but go to Jodie and meet Sadie again for the first time... if we **should happen** to fall in love.
33. Simeon's gaze was cool, as if he **were trying** to recall where he knew her from.
34. It's natural that one **should crumble** a bit with the passage of time, but that doesn't matter.
35. There Isabelle's identification produced a master key to every flat in Shaldon Mansions, held by the shop's owner who did double duty as a recipient of packages and emergency contact **should** a crisis **arise** within the building.
36. She felt a bubble of anger that any man **should stand** in judgement of her in a situation in which he **would not stand** in judgement of another male.
37. There are plenty of examples, but I suggest we **save** the rest of this fascinating discussion for better times.
38. I doubt very much if he **had** ever **seen** their pictures.
39. But for Fifeshire the war **would go on** for ever.

## Exercise 2. Supply suitable verb forms of the verbs in brackets.

1. \_\_\_\_\_ (*be*) he alive, he \_\_\_\_\_ (*be*) proud of his son.
2. I suggest that he \_\_\_\_\_ (*implement*) a budget cut in March.
3. Then he looked at the annexe where he and Tony had decided the evening classes \_\_\_\_\_ (*hold*).

4. I'd rather you \_\_\_\_\_ (*be*) at home playing with your Battle of the Boers landscape too.
5. In an ideal world, everybody \_\_\_\_\_ (*have*) enough to eat.
6. *'I am a Jedi. Like my father before me.'* – *'So \_\_\_\_\_ (*be*) it... Jedi.'*
7. If I \_\_\_\_\_ (*rule*) the country, I \_\_\_\_\_ (*build*) houses for homeless people.
8. There \_\_\_\_\_ (*be*) a lot more happiness if there \_\_\_\_\_ (*be*) no more wars.
9. He later accused Ian of suggesting they \_\_\_\_\_ (*steal*) one of the animals 'for a bit of fun.'
10. Which people you \_\_\_\_\_ (*help*) if you \_\_\_\_\_ (*win*) £1,000,000?
11. You were right to suggest we \_\_\_\_\_ (*drive*) ourselves on our own.
12. I \_\_\_\_\_ (*not touch*) that red button if I \_\_\_\_\_ (*be*) you – it looks dangerous.
13. If teachers and nurses \_\_\_\_\_ (*earn*) a higher salary, they \_\_\_\_\_ (*have*) more respect.
14. *I see what you mean. \_\_\_\_\_ (*be*) that as it may, I can't agree with you.*
15. If leaders of some countries \_\_\_\_\_ (*value*) people more and money less, fewer people \_\_\_\_\_ (*starve*).
16. And what if there \_\_\_\_\_ (*not be*) another car to night?
17. She felt as though she \_\_\_\_\_ (*let*) Constance down.
18. So my suggestion is that you \_\_\_\_\_ (*tell*) me whatever seems relevant.
19. I wish Dad \_\_\_\_\_ (*hurry up*) and \_\_\_\_\_ (*get*) here. Mum's getting edgy.
20. She wrote the name of an electrical firm as well, but suggested that they \_\_\_\_\_ (*not use*) her name in this context.
21. She probably \_\_\_\_\_ (*become*) a model if she \_\_\_\_\_ (*be*) a few centimetres higher.
22. *Mike insisted that she \_\_\_\_\_ (*try*) his new muffin recipe.*
23. If only she \_\_\_\_\_ (*choose*) which she wanted to do herself.
24. 'Before we go any farther, I think we'd better \_\_\_\_\_ (*check*),' whispered Hermione.
25. 'Yes. I wish she \_\_\_\_\_ (*get*) married, then I \_\_\_\_\_ (*not feel*) so responsible for her.
26. The yard isolated them as surely as if they \_\_\_\_\_ (*be*) on separate islands.
27. God \_\_\_\_\_ (*help*) me, I'm relieved he's dead.
28. Perhaps you'd rather I \_\_\_\_\_ (*have*) some friends of mine come around and talk to you.
29. If you \_\_\_\_\_ (*not be*) so brave, you \_\_\_\_\_ (*not chase*) after the thief who stole your MP3 player.
30. *It is essential that the car \_\_\_\_\_ (*wait*) at the airport.*
31. Benji's small grey eyes stared at her as if she \_\_\_\_\_ (*be*) quite mad.
32. But it \_\_\_\_\_ (*be*) really life-affirming, in these days when we aspire to inclusivity, if organisers \_\_\_\_\_ (*do*) the responsible thing and \_\_\_\_\_ (*keep*) the strobe lighting at a rate that \_\_\_\_\_ (*not pose*) a risk.

33. And, oh, if only, only she \_\_\_\_\_ (*not admit*) that she'd told them, he perhaps \_\_\_\_\_ (*agree*) that they could go on seeing each other?
34. I almost wish the old guy \_\_\_\_\_ (*come*) back.
35. But I want to assure you, if it's your last day on earth, even after 2,000 years, I strongly suggest you \_\_\_\_\_ (*go*) for the Versace leaf halter dress.
36. I \_\_\_\_\_ (*sit*) on a beach in Spain if I \_\_\_\_\_ (*not miss*) my flight.
37. Yeah. If you picked A or B, I'm going to politely suggest you \_\_\_\_\_ (*turn*) back a few dozen pages and do some rereading.
38. 'You can slow down now, Jack. I told you, there's no hurry – this one's DOA. I'd rather we all \_\_\_\_\_ (*not wind up*) that way, if you don't mind.'
39. *I suggest that your cousin \_\_\_\_\_ (*apply*) at once.*
40. *I do not want to bore you, \_\_\_\_\_ (*suffice*) it to say, we finally got a full refund.*
41. I wondered if I \_\_\_\_\_ (*be*) mad.
42. Her voice was Irish but slightly accented, as if she \_\_\_\_\_ (*live*) abroad.
43. 'No one would want to be driving a security van round here, too dangerous.' Robin frowned darkly, as if this \_\_\_\_\_ (*be*) a monstrous shadow over their lives.
44. Well, the manners are beaten into one from birth, but I reckoned you'd rather I \_\_\_\_\_ (*eschew*) them at work.
45. He said, 'God \_\_\_\_\_ (*damn*), I'm sorry. Can I help you get him into the trailer or something?'
46. *It is imperative that products \_\_\_\_\_ (*test*) carefully.*
47. I \_\_\_\_\_ (*not be*) now here if you \_\_\_\_\_ (*not phone*) me last week.
48. If you \_\_\_\_\_ (*not bring*) that laptop, we \_\_\_\_\_ (*have*) enough money to go on holiday.
49. *It is vital that everybody \_\_\_\_\_ (*get*) there before the examination begins.*
50. You \_\_\_\_\_ (*not exist*) if your parents never \_\_\_\_\_ (*meet*).
51. *Carl was injured last week, and the doctor recommended that he \_\_\_\_\_ (*not play*) in the next match.*
52. She heard the words as clearly as if they \_\_\_\_\_ (*speak*) aloud.
53. 'Heaven \_\_\_\_\_ (*forbid*) you \_\_\_\_\_ (*have*) to wait,' she said.
54. If only her grandmother \_\_\_\_\_ (*not die*) before Matthew was born.
55. And what if Matty \_\_\_\_\_ (*not be*) alone?
56. I'm only suggesting we \_\_\_\_\_ (*make*) certain they are listening to us.
57. She raced us round a block or two, charging the car at speed bumps as if it \_\_\_\_\_ (*be*) a show-jumper.
58. She'd felt the clouds on the horizon as Lou banged around their tiny kitchen picking holes in everything her mother suggested she \_\_\_\_\_ (*eat*) for supper.
59. We'd better \_\_\_\_\_ (*get*) out of here. I grab her hand, but she shakes me off.
60. Well, I wish I \_\_\_\_\_ (*learn*) Latin because it's sort of the root of all other languages, like French and Italian and Spanish.

### Exercise 3. Put the verbs in brackets in the correct form.

1. Norma isn't happy with her life. If she \_\_\_\_\_ (*listen*) to her mother's advice, she \_\_\_\_\_ (*stay*) at school and \_\_\_\_\_ (*go*) on to university. She \_\_\_\_\_ (*can find*) a good job if she \_\_\_\_\_ (*get*) a degree. Norma hates the job she is doing now. She thinks she \_\_\_\_\_ (*go*) crazy if she \_\_\_\_\_ (*stay*) there much longer. If she \_\_\_\_\_ (*offer*) another job, she \_\_\_\_\_ (*take*) it immediately. In fact, she \_\_\_\_\_ (*leave*) if she \_\_\_\_\_ (*can afford*) to, but she can't. Life \_\_\_\_\_ (*be*) easier if she \_\_\_\_\_ (*not have*) two children to support.
2. Bob was getting very bored of lying in his hospital bed, so he was quite happy to see his Uncle Hamish come into the room. 'Hello Bobby!' shouted Hamish. 'How are you?' 'I \_\_\_\_\_ (*be*) better if I \_\_\_\_\_ (*not lie*) in this hospital,' grumbled Bob. 'Oh, cheer up!' said Hamish. 'You never \_\_\_\_\_ (*get*) better if you \_\_\_\_\_ (*have*) such a negative attitude.' 'You \_\_\_\_\_ (*have*) a negative attitude too if you \_\_\_\_\_ (*be*) stuck in this boring room with no TV for 24 hours a day!' 'Well, you've no one to blame but yourself,' said Hamish. 'If you \_\_\_\_\_ (*not drive*) so fast, you \_\_\_\_\_ (*not crash*) into that tree.' 'Oh, no, Uncle Hamish. Don't say that. If one more person \_\_\_\_\_ (*say*) that to me, I swear I \_\_\_\_\_ (*punch*) them,' said Bob. 'Now, now Bobby! If I \_\_\_\_\_ (*be*) you, I \_\_\_\_\_ (*be*) more polite to my visitors. You're going to be here for a few weeks, and if you \_\_\_\_\_ (*be*) rude to people, they \_\_\_\_\_ (*not come*) to see you,' warned Hamish. 'I'm sorry,' Bob apologised. 'I promise I \_\_\_\_\_ (*be*) polite as long as you \_\_\_\_\_ (*not mention*) my careless doing again.' 'OK, Bobby,' agreed Hamish. 'I'm sorry too. I \_\_\_\_\_ (*not mention*) it if I \_\_\_\_\_ (*know*) how upset it makes you.'
3. If I \_\_\_\_\_ (*be*) a genius, my life so far \_\_\_\_\_ (*be*) very different. I \_\_\_\_\_ (*have to*) work hard at school and I \_\_\_\_\_ (*be*) top of the class in every subject. I \_\_\_\_\_ (*pass*) all my exams with flying colours and I \_\_\_\_\_ (*not have to*) do any revision. If I \_\_\_\_\_ (*try*) a musical instrument, I \_\_\_\_\_ (*learn*) to play it perfectly, so that by now I \_\_\_\_\_ (*be*) a famous musician. On the other hand, being a genius \_\_\_\_\_ (*not be*) as wonderful as all that. If everything \_\_\_\_\_ (*be*) easy, there \_\_\_\_\_ (*be*) no satisfaction in achieving things. It \_\_\_\_\_ (*be*) quite boring to know that I \_\_\_\_\_ (*do*) 100 % in every test – and other people \_\_\_\_\_ (*be*) envious of me and they \_\_\_\_\_ (*hate*) me. I think it \_\_\_\_\_ (*be*) hard to make friends with people if I \_\_\_\_\_ (*be*) a genius. I'm glad I \_\_\_\_\_ (*be*) normal.

### Exercise 4. Paraphrase the following so as to use the Oblique Moods.

1. They had stood up as if to welcome a guest, and now they sat down again.
2. It's time for you to settle down.

3. And that had been what she'd wished her friend to understand.
4. You live in the suburbs, you prefer the city centre.
5. Sue is allergic to seafood. She didn't eat paella last night.
6. Perhaps it is time for me to return to the headmaster's office.
7. She stooped and grabbed a small rock, made as if to throw it at Wes.
8. He peered around at the woods as if seeing them for the first time.
9. I would prefer to have tea rather than coffee if you don't mind.
10. Jeremy regrets not having accepted the job he was offered.
11. I think you should get a haircut!
12. It's a pity governments spend so much money on nuclear weapons.
13. I advise you to see the dentist today, otherwise your toothache will get worse.
14. Would you prefer me to call you Detective Superintendent Grace?
15. It would have been better to hire a car during the holidays. (If only...)
16. It was nearly time for me to go back to Hogwarts.
17. I would like to know how to cook.
18. Luigi's was one of the shops where Glenn Branson, his self-appointed style guru, insisted on taking him from time to time to spruce up his wardrobe.
19. We should leave now. Don't you think?
20. I woke up late and missed my flight to Rome.
21. Our luggage was stolen from our hotel room. We should have insured it.
22. My brother always takes my car without asking me. He is so inconsiderate!
23. It's time for them to start working.
24. 'Why don't we invite Jane to dinner tonight?' Mrs Stone said.
25. 'You should stay in the shade and wear a hat, Mr. Bent,' said the doctor.
26. 'You really must let me pay for the meal,' said Jane.
27. He fled his country because he feared he could be arrested.
28. 'Apparently it was just a track – that's where she insisted on getting out.'

### **Exercise 5. Translate into English.**

1. Мы не стали назначать эту встречу на завтра. Лучше дать всем немного больше времени.
2. Это не в моем характере – экономить на отдыхе и здоровье.
3. Пусть кто-нибудь ответит на это письмо.
4. Боюсь, что Джон выберет наименее надежную марку машины.
5. Крайне важно, чтобы каждый пациент выполнял все рекомендации врача.
6. Нам лучше еще раз внимательно прочитать договор.
7. Удивительно, как это Ник заметил нас.
8. Случись тебе услышать эту новость, запомни детали и передай мне.
9. Светлело, и он начал беспокоиться, как бы его не увидели местные жители.

10. Он выглядел так, словно не спал три дня, готовясь к экзамену.
11. Кто-то предложил пойти в караоке.
12. Я бы предпочел, чтобы вы держали меня в курсе событий.
13. Жаль, что встреча была отменена.
14. Я не смогла бы ответить на ваш вопрос, даже если бы захотела.
15. Я оставил ему записку на столе, чтобы он ее увидел, как только вернется.
16. Повесь объявление повыше, чтобы всем было видно.
17. Она записала название книги, чтобы я мог спросить о ней в библиотеке.
18. Было решено, что дети пойдут в зоопарк сразу после завтрака.
19. Он потребовал, чтобы с ним немедленно расплатились.
20. Необходимо, чтобы ты взял отпуск на месяц.
21. Я пошел к себе в комнату, чтобы меня никто не беспокоил час или два.
22. Кто-то предложил отправить Джо за доктором.
23. Мы боялись, как бы он не заболел.
24. Сомневаюсь, что он помнит, где видел этот рюкзак.
25. Он оставил распоряжение, чтобы нас повезли показать город.
26. Даже если бы он хоть что-то знал об их поездке, он все равно ничего бы не сказал.
27. Он спрятал бумагу в стол, чтобы ее никто не увидел.
28. Он боялся, что произведет плохое впечатление.
29. Мое предложение заключалось в том, чтобы он приехал и погостил у меня несколько дней.
30. Я была бы вам очень признательна, даже если бы ваша помощь ограничилась моральной поддержкой.
31. Если бы прогноз на завтра был благоприятный, мы могли бы отправиться на природу.
32. Жаль, что ты не хочешь обсудить все детали соглашения спокойно.
33. Я настаиваю, чтобы мы остались здесь.
34. Просто возмутительно, что он врет нам!
35. Его отец решил, что он должен изучать юриспруденцию.
36. Ветер был очень сильным – путешники опасались, что старая хижина развалится.
37. Я спрятала газету под диванную подушку, чтобы Макс не увидел ее.
38. У меня и в мыслях нет утверждать, что она сказала вам неправду.
39. Девочка выключила телевизор, чтобы не разбудить мать.
40. Она еще много чего бы сделала, но очень устала.
41. Как бы мне хотелось, чтобы у меня было больше свободного времени!
42. Если бы не этот фильм ужасов, мы бы лучше спали прошлой ночью.
43. Даже если бы меня не отвлекали постоянные телефонные звонки, я бы все равно не успела написать эту статью за один день.

44. Я не стала бы с вами спорить, даже если бы сочла это целесообразным.
45. Как бы мне хотелось, чтобы мои соседи перестали выяснять отношения по вечерам.
46. Он бы вел себя, как всегда, вызывающе, даже если бы оказался в подобной ситуации.
47. Если бы только она помогла мне с этим переводом!
48. Я бы не побоялась провести ночь в этом большом доме, даже если бы была совсем одна.
49. А что, если кто-нибудь узнает? – Будь что будет!

**Exercise 6. Work in pairs or small groups. What would you do in the following situations?**

1. What if you could live perfectly well without sleeping, if you had no need to sleep at all, how would you spend all your nights?
2. What if you woke up suddenly because your house was on fire, which three things would you save as you ran outside?
3. What if you were given three wishes, what would you wish for?
4. What if you had to choose between a wonderful romantic relationship that would end after only a year, or a so-so relationship that would last your entire life, which one would you choose?
5. What if you found a suitcase full of \$1,000,000, what would you do?
6. What if you had to pick one person to be with forever?
7. What if you could eat only one food for the rest of your life, what food would you choose and why?
8. What if instead of police dogs, there were giant, man-sized police spiders?
9. What if you had to change your name, what would your new name be, and why would you choose that name?
10. What if you could be an Olympic athlete, what sport would you compete in?
11. What if you could be in the movie of your choice, what movie would you choose and what character would you play?
12. What if you could sit on a bench in a beautiful woods, who would you like sitting next to you on the bench and why?
13. What if you could invite four famous people to dinner, who would you choose and why?
14. What if a giant asteroid hadn't wiped out the dinosaurs?
15. What if humans were twice as intelligent?
16. What would we do if we discovered aliens?
17. What if electricity were not invented yet, how would your life be different?

**LESSON 13**  
**REVISION OF THE OBLIQUE MOODS.**  
**GETTING READY FOR THE ORAL AND WRITTEN TEST**

**Exercise 1. Check-yourself questions.**

1. What moods are used to express unreal actions?
2. What moods are used to express problematic actions?
3. What temporal relations can the forms of the oblique moods render?
4. Which forms express simultaneous or posterior action?
5. Which forms express prior actions?
6. What are the forms of Subjunctive II?
7. In which simple sentences can we use Subjunctive II?
8. Can Subjunctive II be used in the main clauses of complex sentences?
9. In which nominal clauses can Subjunctive II be used?
10. Can perfect Subjunctive II be used after *it is time, it is high time, it is about time*?
11. What are the implications of *would + infinitive* after the verb *to wish* and *if only*?
12. What clauses can be introduced by the conjunctions *as if, as though*?
13. Which mood is used in the main clause of a complex sentence with the subordinate clause of unreal condition or concession containing Subjunctive II?
14. Is the Conditional Mood a synthetical or an analytical form? What auxiliaries does it employ?
15. Is the Conditional Mood used in the same syntactic structures as Subjunctive II?
16. Which mood would you use in a simple sentence to sound polite?
17. What form of the Conditional Mood would you use in a simple sentence referring to the past?
18. What form of the Conditional Mood would you use in a simple sentence referring to the present or future?
19. What is split condition? How are the forms of Subjunctive II and the Conditional Mood distributed in such cases?
20. What is the only oblique mood in which modal verbs are used?
21. What other analytical oblique mood, besides the Conditional mood, do you know?
22. What is the difference between the forms of the Conditional and the Suppositional Mood?
23. What is the difference between Subjunctive I and the Suppositional Mood?
24. What are the stylistic connotations of Subjunctive I?

25. What formulaic expression with Subjunctive I do you remember?
26. When do we use the Suppositional Mood and Subjunctive I in nominal clauses?
27. When do we use the Suppositional Mood and Subjunctive I in adverbial clauses?
28. What oblique mood forms can be used in nominal and attributive-appositive clauses after a personal emotional reaction in the main clause?
29. What is the peculiarity of the conjunction *lest*? What clauses can be introduced by this conjunction?
30. Which compound verbal modal predicates can the Suppositional Mood be replaced by in adverbial clauses of purpose?
31. What mood variants are possible in the main clause of a complex sentence with the subordinate clause of condition containing the Suppositional Mood?
32. Is inversion in adverbial clauses of condition typical of literary or colloquial style?

**Exercise 2. What would you do or say in the following situations?**

1. You have invited several people to your house for a meal. One of them, you know, is a strict vegetarian. You prepare some soup, then realise you used chicken broth in its preparation. It is too late to do anything about it.
2. You are in the street. You see a mother beating her four-year-old child.
3. At a formal social gathering a friend introduces you to some guests. In the introduction he / she exaggerates the facts and says many things about you which aren't true, but it sounds very impressive.
4. You arrive home one afternoon, open your front door and come face-to-face with a burglar.
5. You have been standing in a queue, patiently, along with several other people, when an old lady elbows her way in front of you.
6. Your boyfriend / girlfriend / husband / wife has just bought some new clothes, which he / she thinks are wonderful. You think they look ridiculous.
7. You have been invited to a fancy-dress party. You arrive, looking outrageous, to find out that it isn't a fancy-dress party at all. Everyone is very smart and elegant.
8. You are in a restaurant. You have been kept waiting for some time, when the waiter appears and goes to the table of someone who arrived after you.
9. Your ten-year-old child is being bullied at school.
10. A five-year-old child asks you, 'Does Father Christmas really exist?'
11. A five-year-old child asks you, 'Where was I ten years ago?'
12. You see a fight in the street. There is nobody else about.
13. You are to sit an important exam. You are waiting in a tutor's office when you happen to see a copy of the exam paper.

### **Exercise 3. Peek my good deed.**

**You are all very nice people and love to help others. Whenever you hear that someone has had a problem, you express how sorry you are for not having been able to help and say what you would have done to help if only you'd known!**

1. Your cousin Jane was in hospital last week, and you didn't even go to visit her.
2. Poor Bill couldn't to the concert last week because he couldn't afford a ticket.
3. Mary got into a lot of trouble because she couldn't finish typing the reports for the meeting.
4. How come you let Ann walk home all by herself after your party last night?
5. Your brother stayed at home all weekend because his car was in the garage.
6. Ray and Meg didn't go out to celebrate their anniversary. They couldn't get a baby-sitter for their four kids.
7. Joe said he went to visit you last Sunday, but you weren't at home.
8. Jean was so depressed. She had no company for the weekend.
9. Greg didn't go home for Christmas because he didn't have enough money for the train ticket.
10. Jane is very upset with you. You didn't invite her for the weekend in your log cabin in the mountains.
11. Douglas went out for lunch without an umbrella. Now he is in bed with pneumonia.
12. Amy was very upset. None of her friends remembered her birthday.
13. Kathy broke her leg and couldn't drive. That's why she didn't come to class today.
14. Because she didn't have anything nice to wear, Robin couldn't go to the ball last Friday.
15. Your mother was definitely upset. She didn't hear a word from you during your whole holiday.
16. Kim didn't take any pictures on her last holiday. She didn't have a good camera, poor thing!
17. Betty couldn't go away for the weekend, because she didn't have the heart to leave her five cats alone for so long.
18. You know that dictionary you borrowed? The teacher needed it so badly, she had to go out and buy another one.
19. Poor Gordon has been wearing the same shirt all week. His washing machine is not working.
20. Just because he didn't do his homework assignment, Brian got a bad mark.
21. Harold missed his plane because there was nobody to take him to the airport.
22. Kate invited 10 friends for dinner last night, but she'd never cooked for so many people. She was desperate!
23. Charles didn't make it to your party last night because he didn't know how to get to your house.
24. Ray spent the whole weekend painting his new apartment. No wonder he was worn out on Monday!

## SUMMARY TABLES

### The Oblique Moods in Simple Sentences

	Mood	Lexical environment	Example	Notes
1	<b>The Conditional Mood</b>	<i>But for ...</i>	He <u>would not have come</u> , <i>but for</i> me.	
2		With <b>implied condition</b>	I <u>wouldn't waste</u> my time on rubbish <i>in your place</i> .	
3		<b>To sound polite/less straightforward</b>	I <u>would think</u> they have a nice bar here in this hotel, don't they? I <u>would have thought</u> it a gross violation of duty and respect.	The <b>perfect</b> form shows the <b>highest</b> degree of politeness
1	<b>Subjunctive II</b>	After <i>oh, that/if only</i> to express wish/regret	<i>Oh, that</i> the storm <u>were</u> over! <i>If only</i> he <u>had come</u> ! <i>If only</i> you <u>would</u> keep the place tidy!	<b>Would</b> in its Subjunctive II form expresses <b>polite request</b> or <b>annoyance</b> . The <b>non-perfect Infinitive</b> refers the action to the <b>present/future</b>
2		With modal verbs <i>could, might, would</i> (used in their Subjunctive II forms)	<u>Could</u> you just give me a lift? They <u>might</u> have done it deliberately. <u>Would</u> you let me see them, please?	<b>Perfect Infinitives</b> refer to the <b>past</b> (show that the action is prior to the moment of speaking)
3		to express <b>advice</b> (Subjunctive II forms <i>had better / had best</i> ) or <b>preference</b> (Subjunctive II forms of <i>would rather / would sooner</i> )	I <u>had better</u> <i>get</i> inside.  'Well, I'd <u>rather</u> <i>have</i> a puppy.' I'd <u>rather</u> <i>not have</i> gone by plane.	<b>Had better + non-perfect Infinitive</b> only! (the action is posterior to the moment of speaking) <b>Perfect Infinitives</b> after <i>would rather</i> refer to the <b>past</b> (show that the action is prior to the moment of speaking)
1	<b>Subjunctive I</b>	<b>Formulaic</b> expressions denoting: <b>wish,</b>	<u>Be</u> yours a happy journey! Success <u>attend</u> you! Long <u>live</u> the Queen!	= ' <i>May + Infinitive</i> '
2		<b>concession,</b>	<u>Come</u> what may. So <u>be</u> it.	= ' <i>Let + Infinitive</i> '
3		<b>commands/requests</b> with an <b>indefinite pronoun</b> as a subject	<i>Nobody</i> <u>move</u> ! <i>Everybody</i> <u>leave</u> the room.	= ' <i>Let + Infinitive</i> '
1	<b>The Suppositional Mood</b>	<i>And what if...?</i>	<i>And what if</i> he <u>should</u> <u>come</u> back?	А что, если <b>вдруг</b> ...?

## The Oblique Moods in Nominal and Appositive Clauses

	In the main clause	Subordinate Clause	Mood in the subordinate clause	Example
1	<b>modal meaning</b> ( <i>order, command, recommendation, suggestion</i> etc.)	1) subject 2) object 3) predicative 4) attributive-appositive (saying the same)	<b>Suppositional (non-perfect), Subjunctive I</b>	1. <i>It is required</i> that each of you <u>work / should work</u> hard. 2. <i>We require</i> that each of you <u>work / should work</u> hard. 3. <i>Our requirement</i> is that each of you <u>work / should work</u> hard. 4. Do you accept our <i>requirement</i> that each of you <u>not work / shouldn't</u> work on Sunday?
2	<b>fear</b> ( <i>be afraid, fear, be terrified</i> etc.)	1) subject 2) object 3) predicative 4) attributive-appositive	<b>Suppositional, Subjunctive I (rarely)</b>	1. <i>It frightens</i> me that he <u>should have been</u> so cruel. 2. I <i>fear</i> <b>lest</b> he <u>find / should find</u> it out. ( <b>КАК БЫ ОН НЕ УЗНАЛ</b> ) 3. My <i>fear</i> is that I <u>be / should be</u> ignored. 4. I have a <i>fear</i> that I <u>lose / should lose</u> my friends.
3	<b>emotion/personal reaction</b> ( <i>amazing, sorry, normal, it's a shame</i> etc.)	1) subject 2) object 3) predicative 4) attributive-appositive	<b>Suppositional</b>	1. It is <i>amazing</i> that you <u>should have learnt</u> the rule. 2. I find it <i>natural</i> that you <u>should help</u> him. 3. The <i>funny</i> thing is you <u>should ask</u> that this morning, Roy. 4. His <i>surprise</i> that you <u>should want</u> him to stay in that house was genuine.
4	<b>it's (high/about) time</b>	attributive	<b>Subjunctive II non-perfect</b>	<i>It was time</i> he <u>learnt</u> the rule. <i>It is time</i> I <u>was going</u> home.
5	<b>a link verb</b> ( <i>be, seem, feel, etc</i> )	predicative after the conjunctions <b>as if / as though</b>	<b>Subjunctive II</b>	<i>It looks as if</i> she <u>didn't like</u> me. <i>I feel as if</i> I <u>had never left</u> home. <i>He felt as if</i> he <u>were falling</u> ill.
6	<b>would rather / would sooner</b>	object	<b>Subjunctive II</b>	<i>I would rather</i> you <u>had stayed</u> there.
7	<b>wish</b>	object	<b>Subjunctive II</b>	<i>I wished</i> it <u>were not</u> raining. <i>I wish</i> I <u>had kept</u> that letter. <b>I wish you</b> <u>wouldn't</u> interrupt me. <b>I wish I / you</b> <u>could</u> sing / <u>could</u> have sung.
8	<b>doubt</b>	indirect question after the conjunctions <b>if / whether</b>	<b>Subjunctive II</b>	<i>I doubt</i> if he <u>were</u> at home. <i>I wonder</i> if he <u>were</u> ready to answer.

## The Oblique in Moods in Adverbial Clauses

	Clause	Mood	Example	Notes
1	of unreal condition	<b>Subjunctive II (non-perfect and perfect)</b>	I wouldn't cheat at the exam <i>if I <u>were</u> you.</i> Would we go there <u>were</u> it to rain? (inversion) <u>Had</u> he <u>known</u> the truth, he would have helped them.	In the <b>main</b> clause the <b>Conditional Mood</b> is used.
2	of unreal concession after <i>even if, even though</i>	<b>Subjunctive II (non-perfect and perfect)</b>	<i>Even if</i> they <u>had wanted</u> me to stay, I would have refused.	In the <b>main</b> clause the <b>Conditional Mood</b> is used.
3	of comparison or manner after <i>as if, as though</i>	<b>Subjunctive II (non-perfect and perfect)</b>	His voice broke <i>as if</i> he <u>were going</u> to cry.	
4	of problematic condition (вдруг / случись так, что)	<b>Suppositional (non-perfect)</b>	<i>If</i> I <u>should meet</u> her, I would speak to her. <u>Should</u> he <u>come</u> , tell him to wait. <u>Should</u> it <u>be</u> wet we shall stay at home.	In the <b>main</b> clause 1) the <b>Conditional Mood</b> , 2) the <b>Imperative Mood</b> (the most common pattern) 3) or <b>Future Indicative</b> is used
5	of purpose after <i>so that, in order that, so, lest (= for fear that)</i>	<b>Suppositional (non-perfect), Subjunctive I</b>	He broke off again <i>lest</i> he ( <u>should</u> ) <u>say</u> too much.	may / might / can / could + infinitive is more frequent

### COMMENTARY ON THE OBLIQUE MOODS

To comment on an **Oblique Mood form** we may take five steps. Any details and peculiarities that make the explanation more complete are highly welcome.

**Step 1:** name the oblique mood.

**Step 2:** describe the morphological form of the oblique mood.

**Step 3:** analyse the sentence structure (e.g. say that the mood is used in a simple sentence / in the object clause of a complex sentence etc.).

**Step 4:** describe the lexical environment (e.g. if you observe a Conditional Mood form in a simple sentence you are to say that:

1) the simple sentence starts with 'but for'

OR 2) the simple sentence has implied condition

OR 3) the Conditional Mood is used in this simple sentence to sound polite).

**Step 5: explain the form** of the oblique mood (you always explain why the form is **non-perfect or perfect**,

PLUS in case the form is **continuous**, you say that the unreal or problematic action is **durable**,

PLUS in case the form is **passive**, you say that the subject **is acted upon**).

Study the following examples and remember that we can always do better.

### Simple Sentences

1. But for the weather I would have stayed at home.

**Would have stayed** is used in **the Conditional Mood** in its **perfect** form in a simple sentence beginning with **but for**. The perfect form refers the unreal action to the **past** (shows that the action is **prior** to the **moment of speaking**).

2. I wouldn't do that in your place.

**Wouldn't do** is used in **the Conditional Mood** in its **non-perfect** form in a simple sentence **with implied condition**. The non-perfect form refers the unreal action to the **present** (shows that the action is **simultaneous** with the **moment of speaking**).

3. 100\$ would be too much for the dress.

**Would be** is used in **the Conditional Mood** in its **non-perfect** form in a simple sentence **to sound polite**. The non-perfect form refers the unreal action to the **present** (shows that the action is **simultaneous** with the **moment of speaking**).

4. If only / oh that it were snowing now.

**Were snowing** is used in its **non-perfect continuous Subjunctive II** form in a simple sentence beginning with **if only / oh that** expressing **wish / regret**. The non-perfect form refers the unreal action to the **present / future** (shows that the action is **simultaneous** with / **posterior** to the **moment of speaking**).

5. If only/oh that it had been snowing yesterday.

**Had been snowing** is used in its **perfect continuous Subjunctive II** form in a simple sentence beginning with **if only / oh that** and expressing **regret**. The perfect form refers the unreal action to the **past** (shows that the action is **prior** to the **moment of speaking**).

6. If only I could play the piano like that!

**Could play** is a compound verbal modal predicate which consists of the modal verb **could** used in its **Subjunctive II** form to denote **lack of possibility due to circumstances** and the **non-perfect infinitive play** referring the action to the **present** (indicating that the action is **simultaneous** with the **moment of speaking**). It is used in a simple sentences beginning with **if only / oh that** and expressing **regret**.

7. If only I could have helped you yesterday.

**Could have helped** is a compound verbal modal predicate which consists of the modal verb **could** used in its **Subjunctive II** form to denote **lack of possibility due to circumstances** and the **perfect infinitive have helped** referring the action to the **past** (indicating that the action is **prior** to the **moment of speaking**). It is used in a simple sentences beginning with **if only / oh that** and expressing **regret**.

8. You could have warned me before.

**Could** is used in its **Subjunctive II** form in a simple sentence in the meaning of **criticism**. It is used with the **perfect** form of the **Infinitive have warned** which refers the action to the **past** (shows that the action is **prior** to the **moment of speaking**).

OR: **could have warned** is a compound verbal modal predicate which consists of the modal verb **could** used in its **Subjunctive II** form to denote **criticism** and the **perfect infinitive have warned** referring the action to the **past** (indicating that the action is **prior** to the **moment of speaking**).

9. You had better do that right now.

**Had better** is a modal expression of **advice** used in its **Subjunctive II** form in a simple sentence. It is used with the **non-perfect** form of the **Infinitive do** which refers the action to the **present** (shows that the action is **simultaneous** with the **moment of speaking**).

OR: **had better do** is a compound verbal modal predicate which consists of the modal expression **had better** used in its **Subjunctive II** form to denote **advice** and the **non-perfect infinitive do** referring the action to the **present / future** (indicating that the action is **simultaneous** with / **posterior** to the **moment of speaking**).

10. I would rather have gone to the cinema than to the park yesterday.

**Would rather** is a modal expression of **preference** used in its **Subjunctive II** form in a simple sentence. It is used with the **perfect** form of the **Infinitive have gone** which refers the action to the **past** (indicating that the action is **prior** to the **moment of speaking**).

OR: **would rather have gone** is a compound verbal modal predicate which consists of the modal expression **would rather** used in its **Subjunctive II** form to denote **preference** and the **perfect infinitive have gone** referring the action to the **past** (indicating that the action is **prior** to the **moment of speaking**).

11. Be yours a happy and full of joy life!

**Be** is used in its **Subjunctive I** form in a simple exclamatory sentence denoting **wish** (in a **formulaic** expression of **wish**).

12. Come what may.

**Come** is used in its **Subjunctive I** form in a simple sentence denoting **concession** (in a **formulaic** expression of **concession**).

13. Everybody stand up!

**Stand up** is used in its **Subjunctive I** form in a simple sentence with an indefinite pronoun as a subject to express **command**.

14. And what if it should be too late to apologize?

**Should be** is used in **the Suppositional Mood** in its **non-perfect** form in a simple sentence beginning with **And what if...?** The non-perfect form refers the problematic action to **the present / future** (shows that the action is **simultaneous** with / **posterior** to the **moment of speaking**).

### Nominal and Appositive Clauses

1. I would rather you did your homework.

**Did** is used in its **non-perfect Subjunctive II** form. It is used in the **object** clause of a complex sentence after the modal phrase **would rather** in the main clause. The non-perfect form shows **simultaneity** with the **moment of speaking** / refers the action to the **present**.

2. I would rather she had found a permanent job when she graduated.

**Had found** is used in its **perfect Subjunctive II** form. It is used in the **object** clause of a complex sentence after the modal phrase **would rather** in the main clause. The perfect form shows **priority** to the **moment of speaking** / refers the action to the **past**.

3. I wish I earned more.

**Earned** is used in its **non-perfect Subjunctive II** form. It is used in the **object** clause of a complex sentence after the verb **wish** in the main clause. The non-perfect form shows that the unreal action is **simultaneous** with / **posterior** to the action shown by the finite verb **wish**.

4. I wish I hadn't got into this mess.

**Hadn't got** is used in its **perfect Subjunctive II** form. It is used in the **object** clause of a complex sentence after the verb **wish** in the main clause. The perfect form shows that the unreal action is **prior** to the action shown by the finite verb **wish**.

5. I wish you wouldn't sing in the bath.

**Wouldn't sing** is a compound verbal modal predicate which consists of the modal verb **would** used in its **Subjunctive II** form to denote **polite request / annoyance** and the **non-perfect infinitive sing** indicating that the action is **posterior** to the action shown by the finite verb **wish**. It is used in the **object** clause of a complex sentence after the verb **wish** in the main clause.

6. I wish I could sing.

**Could sing** is a compound verbal modal predicate which consists of the modal verb **could** used in its **Subjunctive II** form to denote **lack of possibility due to circumstances** and the **non-perfect infinitive sing** indicating that the action is **simultaneous** with the action shown by the finite verb **wish**. It is used in the **object** clause of a complex sentence after the verb **wish** in the main clause.

7. I wish I could have made my way in the world.

**Could have made** is a compound verbal modal predicate which consists of the modal verb **could** used in its **Subjunctive II** form to denote **lack of possibility due to circumstances** and the **perfect infinitive have** indicating that the action is **prior** to the action shown by the finite verb **wish**. It is used in the **object** clause of a complex sentence after the verb **wish** in the main clause.

8. It is time I made up my mind.

**Made up** is used in its **non-perfect Subjunctive II** form. It is used in the **attributive** clause of a complex sentence after the expression **It's time...** in the main clause.

9. It was as if she were trying to tell him something.

**Were trying** is used in its **non-perfect continuous Subjunctive II** form. It is used in the **predicative** clause of a complex sentence after the conjunction **as if**. The non-perfect form shows that the **unreal** action is **simultaneous** with the action shown by the finite verb **was**.

10. I doubted if it were possible.

**Were** is used in its **non-perfect Subjunctive II** form. It is used in an **indirect question** after the expression of **doubt** in the main clause. The non-perfect form shows **simultaneity** with the finite verb **doubted**.

11. It is necessary that all work hard.

**Work** is used in its **Subjunctive I** form. It is used in the **subject** clause of a complex sentence. In the main clause a **modal meaning** is expressed.

12. I'm sorry that she should worry about that.

**Should worry** is used in **the Suppositional Mood** in its **non-perfect** form. It is used in the **object** clause of a complex sentence. In the main clause **emotion / personal reaction** is expressed. The non-perfect form shows **simultaneity** with the finite verb **am**.

13. His fear was lest he should be seen.

**Should be seen** is used in **the Suppositional Mood** in its **non-perfect passive** form. It is used in the **predicative** clause of a complex sentence. In the main clause **fear** is expressed. The non-perfect form shows **simultaneity** with the finite verb **was**.

14. Do you accept our requirement that all should work hard?

**Should work** is used in **the Suppositional Mood** in its **non-perfect** form. It is used in the **attributive appositive** clause of a complex sentence after the noun **requirement** in the main clause. The noun **requirement** has a **modal meaning**.

### Adverbial Clauses

1. I would never forgive myself if I profited by his generosity.

**Would forgive** is used in **the Conditional Mood** in its **non-perfect** form. It is used in the **main clause** of a complex sentence. **Profited** is used in its **non-perfect Subjunctive II** form. It is used in the adverbial clause of **unreal condition**. The **non-perfect** forms refer the unreal actions to the **present/future** (show that the unreal actions are **simultaneous** with / **posterior** to the **moment of speaking**).

2. I would never have forgiven myself if I had profited by his generosity.

**Would have forgiven** is used in **the Conditional Mood** in its **perfect** form. It is used in the **main clause** of a complex sentence. **Had profited** is used in its **perfect Subjunctive II** form. It is used in the adverbial clause of **unreal condition**. The perfect forms refer the unreal actions to the **past** (show that the unreal actions are **prior** to the **moment of speaking**).

3. If I hadn't been laid off, I wouldn't be on the dole now.

**Wouldn't be** is used in **the Conditional Mood** in its **non-perfect** form. It is used in the **main clause** of a complex sentence. The non-perfect form of the Conditional mood refers the unreal action to the **present** (shows that the unreal action is **simultaneous** with the **moment of speaking**).

**Hadn't been laid off** is used in its **perfect Subjunctive II** form. It is used in the adverbial clause of **unreal condition**. The perfect Subjunctive II mood form refers the unreal action to the **past** (shows that the unreal action is **prior** to the **moment of speaking**).

4. Even if they had wanted me to stay I would have refused.

**Would have refused** is used in **the Conditional Mood** in its **perfect** form. It is used in the **main clause** of a complex sentence. **Had wanted** is used in its **perfect Subjunctive II** form. It is used in the adverbial clause of **unreal concession**. The perfect forms refer the actions to the **past** (show that the unreal action is **prior** to the **moment of speaking**).

5. He speaks as if he had never seen me before.

**Had seen** is used in its **perfect Subjunctive II** form. It is used in the adverbial clause of **comparison** of a complex sentence. The perfect form of Subjunctive II shows **priority** to the finite verb **speaks**.

6. If I should see him, I'll tell him the news.

**Shall/will tell** is used in the in **the Future Simple tense** form in the **main clause** of a complex sentence. **Should see** is used in **the Suppositional Mood** in its **non-perfect** form. It is used in the adverbial clause of **problematic condition**. The non-perfect form of the Suppositional Mood refers the action to the **future**.

7. If I should see him, I would tell him the news.

**Would tell** is used in the in **the Conditional Mood** in its **non-perfect** form in the **main clause** of a complex sentence. **Should see** is used in **the Suppositional Mood** in its **non-perfect** form. It is used in the adverbial clause of **problematic condition**. The non-perfect forms refer the actions to the **future**.

8. If you should see him, tell him the news.

**Tell** is used in the in **the Imperative Mood** in the **main clause** of a complex sentence. **Should see** is used in **the Suppositional Mood** in its **non-perfect** form. It is used in the adverbial clause of **problematic condition**. The non-perfect form of the Suppositional Mood refers the action to the **future**.

9. Bertha dared to say nothing lest he should hear tears in her voice.

**Should hear** is used in **the Suppositional Mood** in its **non-perfect** form. It is used in the adverbial clause of **purpose** of a complex sentence after the conjunction **lest**. The non-perfect form of the Suppositional Mood shows that the action is **posterior** to the finite verb **dared**.

## TRANSLATION

### Simple Sentences

1. **But for** the weather I **would have stayed** at home. – Если бы не погода, я бы остался дома.
2. I **wouldn't do** that (in your place). – Я бы не стал делать это (на твоём месте).
3. \$50 **would be** too much for the book. – Пятьдесят долларов – это многовато за эту книгу.
4. **If only / oh that** it **were snowing now / had been snowing yesterday**. – Ах, если бы шел снег сейчас / вчера.
5. You **could warn** me / **could have warned** me *before*. – Ты мог бы предупредить меня / мог бы предупредить меня раньше.
6. You **had better not do** that right *now*. – Ты бы лучше это не делала сейчас.
7. I would rather / sooner go to the park *now* / have gone to the cinema *yesterday*. – Я бы, пожалуй, пошел в парк сейчас / в кино вчера.
8. Everybody stand up! – Всем встать!

9. **And what if it should be** too late to apologize? – А что, если вдруг уже слишком поздно просить прощения?
10. **Long live** the Army / heroes, etc! – Да здравствует армия / герои!
11. **Glory be!** – Черт (возьми)!
12. **Success attend** you! – Удачи! С Богом!
13. **Be yours** a happy meeting! – Пусть Ваша встреча будет успешной!
14. **Far be** it from me to think of that. – У меня такого и в мыслях не было.
15. **God bless** you! Будь здоров! – Благослови тебя Господь! Боже мой!
16. **God save** the Queen! – Боже, храни королеву!
17. **Suffice** it to say that he is a liar. – Достаточно сказать, что он лжец.
18. **Heaven forbid!** – Боже упаси!
19. **Curse** this fog! – Будь проклят этот туман!
20. **The devil take** him! – Черт бы его побрал!
21. **Manners be** hanged! – К черту манеры!
22. **Confound** your ideas! – К черту твои идеи!
23. **Confound** it! – К черту!
24. **God damn** it! – Будь оно проклято!
25. **God rest** his soul! – Да упокоится душа его с миром!
26. **Heaven help** us! – Да поможет нам Бог!
27. **God forbid!** – Боже упаси!
28. **Far be** it from me..! – У меня и в мыслях не было...
29. **Happen (come)** what may (will). – Что бы ни случилось!
30. **Cost** what it may. – Чего бы это ни стоило.
31. **So be** it / **Be** it so. – Пусть будет так.
32. **Be** that as it may. – Как бы то ни было. / Будь что будет.
33. **Be** it rain or snow / **Come** rain or shine. – Каковы бы ни были обстоятельства.
34. **If need be** ... – При необходимости...
35. **(If) truth be told**... – Откровенно говоря...

### Nominal and Appositive Clauses

1. I suggest / demand / require that you **(should) do** that. – Предлагаю / требую, чтобы ты это **сделал**.
2. It's nice / normal / surprising that you **should do / have done** that. – Хорошо / нормально / удивительно, что ты это **делаешь / сделал**.
3. I fear / I'm afraid / I'm anxious **lest** you **should do / have done** that. – Боюсь, что ты **сделаешь / сделал** это.
4. **It is / was / will be** time we / you / they **did / was doing** that. – Пора нам / тебе / им сделать это.
5. I **wish / wished** you **did** your homework. – **Жаль**, что ты **не делаешь** домашнее задание.

6. I **wish / wished** you **had done** your homework. – **Жаль**, что ты **не сделал** домашнее задание.
7. I **wish** I **could** ski. – **Жаль**, что я **не могу** кататься на лыжах.
8. I **wish** you **would do** your homework. – **Мне бы хотелось**, чтобы ты **делал** домашние задание.
9. I'd **rather** you **did / had done** it. – Я **бы предпочел**, чтобы ты **это сделал**.
10. I **doubt / doubted** if it **were** possible. – **Сомневаюсь / я сомневался**, что это **возможно**.
11. I feel **as though** I **were** invisible. – У меня такое чувство, **словно** я **невидимка**.
12. She looks **as if** she **had seen** a ghost. – У нее такой вид, **словно** она **увидела** призрака.

### Adverbial Clauses

1. I **would** never **forgive** myself if I **profited** by his generosity. – Я **бы** себе **никогда не простил**, если **бы воспользовался** его щедростью.
2. I **would** never **have forgiven** myself if I **had profited** by his generosity when we worked together. – Я **бы** себе **никогда не простил**, если **бы воспользовался** его щедростью, когда мы **вместе работали**.
3. **Even if** they **wanted** me to stay, I **would refuse**. – **Даже если бы** они **и хотели**, чтобы я **остался**, то я **бы отказался**.
4. **If I should see** him, I'll tell him the news. – **Случись так, что** я его увижу, я **расскажу** ему новости.
5. He speaks **as though / as if** he **had** never **seen** me before. – Он так говорит, **словно** **никогда раньше не видел** меня.
6. He smiles **as though / as if** he **were** happy. – Он **улыбается так, что можно подумать**, словно он **счастлив**.
7. Bertha dared to say nothing **lest** he **should hear** tears in her voice. – Берта не **осмелилась** сказать ни слова, **чтобы он не услышал**, что она **плакала**.
8. I have brought you apples **so that** you **should eat** them. – Я **принесла** яблоки, **чтобы ты их съел**.

# THE ARTICLE

## THE FUNCTIONS OF ARTICLES

### The Indefinite Article (a / an)

The functions of the indefinite article (**a / an**) are **classifying, generic, numerical and aspective**:

- 1) in **its classifying function** the indefinite article presents a person, object or event as a specimen of a certain class.

*I have bought a car.*

*She is a student.*

The noun preceded by the classifying indefinite article is often:

- a) accompanied by premodifying and postmodifying attributes;

*I have bought a new car.*

- b) used as a predicative or apposition;

*I am an engineer.* (predicative)

*I am meeting Kate, a very good girl.* (apposition)

- c) used with **like** and **as**;

*He works **as** a teacher.*

*The park looked **like** a jungle.*

- d) introduces some new information (the rheme of the message).

*The car stopped outside our house and **a man** got out.*

*There is **a cat** in the armchair.*

In its classifying function the indefinite article can be rendered **into Russian** as *один из, какой-то, некий*.

*The car stopped outside our house and **a man** got out.* – *Машина остановилось около дома, и из нее вышел **какой-то мужчина**.*

- 2) in **its generic function** the indefinite article shows that the object denoted by the noun is a representative of the class, and therefore what is said about one specimen of a class can be applied to all the specimens of the class. The meaning of the article is close to **every / any**.

***A female kangaroo** carries its young in its pouch.*

The noun preceded by the generic indefinite article is often used:

– in proverbs: ***A cat** has nine lives.*

– in sentences expressing general truth: ***A creaking gate** hangs long.*

In its generic function the indefinite article can be rendered **into Russian** as *каждый, всякий, любой*.

*An African elephant has larger ears than an Indian elephant. – У любого африканского слона уши больше, чем у индийского (слона).*

3) in **its numerical function** the indefinite article implies the idea of ‘oneness’.

The numerical meaning is generally found:

a) with nouns denoting time, measure and weight;

*Wait for **a minute** or two.*

b) with the numerals *hundred, thousand, million* and the nouns *dozen, score*;

*Walk **a hundred** yards in among the pines and you leave the city.*

*He sent his wife **a dozen** red roses.*

c) after the negative *not*;

*She didn't say **a word**.*

d) in some set phrase like *at a time, at a gulp, at a draught*, etc.;

*He took the stairs two **at a time**.*

*He drank several glasses, one after another, **at a gulp**.*

e) between two noun groups in expressions denoting prices, salaries, speeds:

*\$50 a week, 90 kilometers an hour.*

In its numerical function the indefinite article can be rendered *into Russian* as *один, один и тот же, такой же*.

*They are of **an age**. – Они **одного и того же** возраста.*

*She didn't say **a word**. – Она не сказала ни **одного слова**.*

4) in **its aspective function** the indefinite article serves to bring out a special aspect of the notion expressed by the noun.

The aspective meaning is generally found:

a) with uncountable abstract nouns (that can be modified by attributes);

*There was **a warmth** between them, a sense of waiting.*

***A dull burning anger** rose in his chest.*

b) with nouns denoting unique things or notions.

*The moon hung in the sky, **a young silver moon** in the pale summer night.*

In its aspective function the indefinite article can be rendered *into Russian* as *некий, какой-то*.

*There was **an unexplained bitterness** in her voice. – В ее голосе была **какая-то** необъяснимая горечь.*

## The Definite Article (*the*)

The functions of the definite article (*the*) are **specifying** and **generic**:

- 1) in **its specifying function** the definite article singles out an object or a group of objects from all other objects of the same kind.

The specification is provided by:

- a) **the situation**, when the speaker assumes that the hearer knows the object discussed. They are objects that surround the speaker indoors (*the window, the door*) or outdoors (*the street*) or are found in a particular place/community (*the cinema, the pub, the church*);

*Open **the window**, please.*

*She's gone to **the butcher's**.*

*I am going to **the cinema** tomorrow.*

- b) **the preceding context**, when the noun with the definite article may be a mere repetition of the noun mentioned before or it may be referred to the word or statement just mentioned;

*I watched a car as it came up our road. **The car** stopped outside our house.*

*We had good time on holiday. **The hotel** was comfortable, and **the beach** was only ten minutes away.*

- c) **the meaning of the noun (unique reference)**: *the earth, the sun, the moon, the sky, the world, the Universe, the equator, the north pole, the south pole, the horizon, the solar system, the weather, the devil, the Pope*;

***The earth** doesn't belong to us.*

- d) **a restrictive (limiting/specifying) attribute** in a pre- or postposition to the noun phrase.

*That's **the man** we met last night.*

***The tourism industry** is booming in Malaysia.*

In its specifying function the definite article can be rendered *into Russian* as *тот, тот самый*.

*That's **the shirt** I bought yesterday. – Это **та самая рубашка**, которую я купил вчера.*

- 2) in **its generic function** the definite article refers to the whole class of objects of the same kind.

***The compass** was invented in ancient China.*

***The kangaroo** is far from being extinct.*

The definite article in its generic function is also used with substantivized adjectives. They present:

- a) words denoting abstract notions (agreement with a singular verb);

***The supernatural** has always attracted me.*

*He always has a love for **the concrete**.*

- b) words denoting groups of people (agreement with a plural verb).

***The young** live an active life.*

### **The Zero Article (-)**

The functions of the zero article (-) are **classifying** and **generic**:

- 1) in **its classifying function** the zero article presents people, objects or material, abstract notions as a specimen of a certain class. **BUT** in such cases the zero article is used with a particular group of nouns: plural countable nouns (with or without a descriptive attribute):

(-) ***Girls** entered the room.* (corresponds to a singular noun with the indefinite article *A girl entered the room.*) Mind the translation into Russian: *Какие-то девушки вошли в комнату.*

*They are (-) **good students**.* (corresponds to a singular noun with the indefinite article *He is a good student.*)

- 2) in **its generic function** the zero article refers to the whole class of objects of the same kind.

In this function the article is used with particular groups of nouns:

- a) plural countable nouns (without attributes) The zero article means 'all';

(-) ***Kangaroos** are common in Australia.*

Mind the difference between the zero article used in its classifying function and the zero article used in its generic function. This can be checked by translating the sentence into Russian.

*He catches frogs.* (the classifying function) – *Он ловит (каких-то) лягушек.*

(-) ***Frogs** have long hind legs.* (the generic function) – *У (всех) лягушек длинные задние ноги.*

- b) the words *man* and *woman* (the highest degree of generalization);

*Wood is the oldest building material known to (-) **man**.*

*She also wanted to talk, (-) **woman to (-) woman**.*

- c) in some prepositional phrases of adverbial meaning: *in / out of town, by train, by bus;*

*Churchill was in **town**.*

*The journey took two hours by **train**.*

- d) uncountable nouns (with or without attributes).

(-) ***Water** is necessary for animal and plant life.*

(-) ***Colombian coffee** is said to be the best.*

## HOW TO COMMENT ON ARTICLES

### Four steps:

1. Define the type of the article (*definite, indefinite, zero*)
2. Describe the morphological characteristics of the word (usually the noun) the article is used before (*used before the ... noun ...*)
3. Define the function of the article (*classifying, specifying, generic, numerical or aspective*)
4. Add some other peculiarities if necessary (*The article has the meaning..., The specification is provided by ..., The noun is modified by ..., etc.*)

### Examples of comments

1. *I have bought **a** new car.*  
The indefinite article is used with a countable noun in the singular in its classifying function. The noun is premodified by the descriptive attribute 'new'.
2. ***A** kangaroo carries its young in its pouch.*  
The indefinite article is used with a countable noun in the singular in its generic function. Any representative of the class is meant. / The article has the meaning of 'any', 'every'.
3. *Wait for **a** minute or two.*  
The indefinite article is used before the noun 'minute' in its numerical function. The article has the meaning of the cardinal numeral 'one'.
4. *Her face had **a** calmness that was new to her.*  
The indefinite article 'a' is used with an uncountable abstract noun modified by a descriptive attribute in its aspective function. A certain aspect is meant.
5. ***An** orange sun was rising.*  
The indefinite article 'a' is used with a noun denoting a unique thing modified by a descriptive attribute in its aspective function. A certain aspect is meant.
6. *She's gone to **the** bakery.*  
The definite article is used with a countable noun in the singular in its specifying function. The specification is provided by the situation.
7. ***The** kangaroo is far from being extinct.*  
The definite article is used with a countable noun in the singular in its generic function. It refers to the whole class of objects of the same kind.
8. *(-) **Frogs** have long hind legs.*  
The zero article is used before the plural countable noun 'frogs' in its generic function. The article has the meaning of 'all'.
9. *(-) **Water** is necessary for animal and plant life.*  
The zero article is used before the material uncountable noun 'water' in its generic function.

## Exercise 1. Define the functions of the articles in the text.

### Sweden: How cash became more trouble than it's worth

Richard Orange

9 March, 2019

<sup>1</sup> After 80 years living in Sweden, **1)** (-) coins and notes don't feel like **2)** (-) money any more. This is not surprising because my Swedish wife and I rarely use cash. We're not alone. In 2018, only about one in eight Swedes said they had recently used cash to buy something.

<sup>2</sup> More and more cafes, restaurants and shops in my home city of Malmö are not taking cash any more, and **3)** (-) big stores are starting to join them.

<sup>3</sup> But they take Swish, **4)** a payment system that allows you to transfer cash to others using only their phone number. Swish started as **5)** a way to send small amounts of cash to **6)** (-) friends, but it can now be used for almost anything.

<sup>4</sup> It can be very convenient. When I left my wallet at home on Monday, my wife 'Swished' **7)** the payment for my coffee and croissant from her desk at **8)** (-) work.

<sup>5</sup> During collection at **9)** (-) Swedish churches, people are much more likely to take out their phones than their wallets.

<sup>6</sup> But not everyone is happy. **10)** A group called Cash Rebellion believes the disappearance of cash is **11)** a serious threat to **12)** (-) democracy, privacy and individual freedom.

<sup>7</sup> Other people warn that some old and mentally disabled people have **13)** (-) difficulty with digital payments. But my 72-year-old mother-in-law does not know anyone her age who has **14)** (-) problems.

<sup>8</sup> The Civil Contingencies<sup>1</sup> Agency, which prepares Sweden for **15)** (-) crisis, advises everyone to keep cash at home in case **16)** the payment system crashes.

<sup>9</sup> But for me, **17)** (-) cash is now difficult to use. There are only three places where I still use cash: my local hairdresser's, **18)** the bicycle repair shop and the food market.

<sup>10</sup> Occasionally, perhaps once or twice **19)** a month, when I want 200 kronor (£16), it can be difficult to get. **20)** The cash machine nearest my house has gone, and only one branch of Swedbank, my bank, in Malmö still has cash.

<sup>11</sup> I've swapped my old thick leather wallet for **21)** a thin card holder, and **22)** the coins I have fall to the bottom of my bag or pockets or get stuck behind the sofa or in jars.

---

<sup>1</sup> Contingencies – непредвиденные расходы

<sup>12</sup> Some Ikea stores have stopped accepting cash because they found just 1 % of customers paid that way. But when hospitals in Sweden announced they were no longer taking cash, there was **23) an** outcry<sup>1</sup>.

<sup>13</sup> *Situation Sthlm* is **24) a** magazine sold by **25) (-)** homeless people in Stockholm. But **26) the** sellers couldn't sell magazines to people who didn't have cash. **27) The** solution? **28) A** badge for sellers with **29) a** payment code. Buyers scan it with their phone, make a digital payment using **30) the** mobile payment system Swish, and then **31) the** seller gets their cash from **32) the** Situation Sthlm offices.

<sup>14</sup> As many people have stopped using cash, there is less crime and more money from taxes in Sweden. But we shouldn't think badly of people who use cash because many have no other choice.

**Exercise 2. Comment on the use of articles in bold. Present a full comment. See the examples of comments above.**

1. These days people want more contact with (-) nature.
2. Their working day on Skomer began with **a** phone call to **the** boatman to see if **the** weather is good enough for boats to go to **the** island.
3. Richard Brown, 38, and Giselle Eagle, 34, have **a** quieter life.
4. They get a fresh food delivery by (-) boat once **a** month.
5. Food production already causes (-) great damage to **the** environment, via (-) greenhouse gases from livestock, deforestation and water shortages.
6. He was sure in those days that **a** brilliant future was awaiting his son.

**Exercise 3. Fill in a / an or one /ones.**

1. I'm making ... sandwich. Would you like ... ?
2. There was only ... sandwich left. All the others had been eaten.
3. We saw ... giraffe and ... alligator at the zoo.
4. These biscuits are nicer than the ... I normally buy.
5. She paid ... thousand pounds for her car.
6. ... day, I will buy a house of my own.
7. I'd love ... car like that ... over there.
8. I'm looking for ... dress. I'd like a blue ... .
9. I heard ... amusing joke yesterday.
10. I like these three pairs of trousers. Which ... do you like best?

---

<sup>1</sup> Outcry – бурный протест

**Exercise 4. Fill in the gaps with one of the words from the list adding *the* where necessary. Use each word twice.**

*prison, school, bed, sea, hospital*

1. The minute we reached the beach, the children ran into ... to swim.
2. My brother is in the navy. He is at ... for months sometimes.
3. I usually go to ... at about 11 p.m. to get a good night's sleep.
4. The cat is sitting on ... .
5. The Prime Minister visited ... yesterday and talked to the prisoners.
6. The men who robbed the bank are in ... now.
7. The ambulance took the injured people to ... .
8. I must go to ... to visit my aunt. She's had an operation.
9. We saw the children in their classrooms as we walked past ... .
10. I want to go to university when I leave ... .

**Exercise 5. Choose the correct alternative.**

1. Catherine loves *cats* / *the cats*.
2. Look at *cats* / *the cats*! They are chasing a bird.
3. I don't like *coffee* / *the coffee*, but I like *tea* / *the tea*.
4. You cut *the cake* / *cake* and I'll pour *coffee* / *the coffee*.
5. *Life* / *The life* will be very different in the future.
6. *Life* / *The life* of a mayfly is extremely short.
7. I enjoy *swimming* / *the swimming* in the sea.
8. *Children* / *The children* usually like playing games.
9. *Children* / *The children* have gone to the park.
10. All *people* / *the people* in this room are my relatives.
11. All *people* / *the people* should have freedom of speech.
12. *Villages* / *The villages* in this part of the country are very beautiful.
13. *Breakfast* / *The breakfast* is the most important meal of *day* / *the day*.
14. Paul was *only* / *the only* person who remembered me.
15. We travelled to London by *train* / *the train*.
16. He is learning to play *flute* / *the flute*.

**Exercise 6. Fill in *a* / *an* or *the* where necessary.**

1. A: Shall we go to ... cinema tonight?  
B: Yes. It's a long time since I saw ... film.
2. A: What did you have for ... lunch today?  
B: I had ... sandwich in ... office canteen.
3. A: Danny plays ... golf very well, doesn't he?  
B: Yes, he practices every weekend with his friends.

4. A: Have you got ... car?  
B: Yes, I bought ... second-hand one last winter.
5. A: How often do you take ... holiday?  
B: I go to my house in ... country about twice ... year.
6. A: I can't find ... shoes I wanted to wear for my party.  
B: Have you looked in ... cupboard in ... hall?
7. A: Did you have fun at ... theatre last night?  
B: Yes, it was ... enjoyable evening and ... play was great.
8. A: That's ... interesting painting.  
B: I know. I found it in ... attic.
9. A: Did you stay in ... hotel when you went to London?  
B: Yes. We had ... beautiful room in the King hotel.

**Exercise 7. Choose the correct alternative.**

1. *Historian* / *A historian* is a person who studies *history* / *the history*.
2. *Panda* / *The panda* is a large mammal which lives in China. *Pandas* / *The pandas* have black and white fur and eat *bamboo* / *the bamboo* shoots.
3. We visited *wildlife park* / *a wildlife park* last week. It was *interesting experience* / *an interesting experience*.
4. Sally's going to buy *the new car* / *a new car* next month. She wants one which runs on *lead-free petrol* / *the lead-free petrol*.
5. We stayed at *hotel* / *a hotel* by *the sea* / *sea*. *Room* / *The room* was very comfortable and *a view* / *the view* was fantastic.
6. Simon was *last* / *the last* person to arrive at *party* / *the party*. He had been waiting for *the taxi* / *a taxi* for an hour.
7. Susan doesn't believe in *ghosts* / *the ghosts*. She thinks that *the supernatural* / *a supernatural* is *a product* / *product of people's* / *the people's* imagination.
8. *Clothes* / *The clothes* I bought yesterday were very cheap. There was *sale* / *a sale* in one of *department stores* / *the department stores* in *a city centre* / *the city centre*.

**Exercise 8. In each space put *a* / *an* or *the*, or leave the space *blank*.**

1. Please watch ... cabin attendant as she demonstrates ... use of ... oxygen mask.
2. Paul spent ... half of his life in the Far East.
3. You have to use at ... least ... pint and ... half of milk.
4. Kate has ... sore throat and is taking ... medicine.
5. We arranged ... accommodation on ... outskirts of ... city.
6. I felt I was at ... crossroads in my life.
7. Could you give me ... information I asked for in ... letter I sent you?
8. I bought ... jewellery for my sister but it wasn't ... kind she likes.
9. I always wanted to be ... astronaut but ... ambition wore off.
10. And ... last of all, don't forget to put ... cat out for ... night.

**Exercise 9. Complete the sentences with *a / an* or *the*, or leave blank for *zero* article.**

1. ... victim was waiting for ... bus outside ... hospital when ... offence took place.
2. Maria forgot to turn off ... iron when she went to answer ... knock at the door, and she burnt ... hole in ... ironing board.
3. We went to Crete on ... holiday and spent ... week walking over ... mountains admiring ... scenery.
4. After you put ... coffee in ... machine, fill it with ... water, and make sure ... water comes up to ... level of ... thick black line.
5. When I'm at ... work, I'm only allowed to take ... personal calls in ... emergency.
6. Helen is in ... bed with ... temperature, so ... trip to ... country has been postponed until ... next week.
7. At ... last minute, David decided to go away for ... few days and stay in ... hotel by ... sea.
8. ... train to Manchester was ... half ... hour late by ... time it reached Watford.

**Exercise 10. Complete the text with *the* or *zero* article.**

1. ... survival of ... most large mammals is being put at risk by ... global warming.
2. Is ... person you are talking about ... Jane Small you knew at ... university.
3. ... foreigners often have ... trouble getting used to ... Scottish climate.
4. ... decoration in ... small bedroom is really pleasing but I don't like ... colour of curtains.
5. I missed ... beginning of ... film, so I didn't understand ... plot until half-way through.
6. ... experts disagree as to whether ... men are ... better drivers than ... women.
7. ... most of ... people I know don't always get on with ... other people ... first time they meet them.
8. What exactly is ... difference between ... rhythm of a piece of ... music and ... tune.
9. Helen has gone to ... library to get ... information she needs for ... project she's doing at ... school.
10. I don't know why you always put ... sugar in your coffee if you're trying to lose ... weight.

**Exercise 11. Fill in *a / an* or *the* where necessary.**

- A** (1) ... football team who have won the World Cup (2) ... most times is Brazil. They have won (3) ... competition four times. (4) ... team also hold (5) ... record for (6) ... greatest number of (7) ... goals scored overall and have played in every one of (8) ... tournament's finals.

- B** (1) ... tallest man in (2) ... world was born in the USA in 1918. His name was Robert Wadlow and (3) ... last time he was measured in 1940, he had reached a height of 2.72 m. His hands were 32.4 cm from (4) ... wrist to (5) ... tip of (6) ... middle finger.
- C** David was waiting at King's Cross station. He was about to travel to Newcastle by (1) ... train for (2) ... job interview. However, (3) ... train was late and he had been standing on (4) ... platform for over (5) ... hour.
- D** I take (1) ... bus to (2) ... school every day. I leave (3) ... house at eight o'clock in (4) ... morning. It is (5) ... five-minute walk from my house to (6) ... bus-stop. (7) ... journey to school takes about (8) ... quarter of (9) ... hour.
- E** The Queen is going to visit Bridgeford next week to open (1) ... new hospital which has been built in (2) ... town. It will be (3) ... exciting event which all (4) ... local people will attend.
- F** Stuart has got (1) ... cold. So he has to stay in (2) ... bed. His mother has made him (3) ... bowl of soup and he has got (4) ... box of (5) ... tissues on his bedside table. He will probably spend most of (6) ... day sleeping.

**Exercise 12. Complete the text with *a / an* or *the*, or leave blank for *zero* article.**

Whether (1) ... particular species of (2) ... bird migrates depends on (3) ... number of (4) ... factors. (5) ... most important influence on (6) ... migration is (7) ... climate of (8) ... area where (9) ... birds breed, and (10) ... small number of birds remain in an area where there is (11) ... harsh winter. So in (12) ... Scandinavia (13) ... blackbird is (14) ... migratory bird, but it is not (15) ... migratory in (16) ... southern Europe where (17) ... winters are milder. Another factor is (18) ... type of (19) ... food involved. Some birds eat mainly (20) ... insects which are not available in winter, so these birds have to undertake (21) ... migration in order to find food. However, lack of (22) ... food is now (23) ... trigger for migration, and birds need to be well fed before they start (24) ... long distance flight. The main reasons for (25) ... migrating seem to be partly genetic and partly (26) ... result of (27) ... small changes in ... weather or in (28) ... length of (29) ... day.

**Out-of-class Work**

**Exercise 1. Complete the text with *a / an* or *the*, or leave blank for *zero* article.**

(1) ... author George Orwell (1903–1950: real name Eric Blair) was (2) ... English novelist, critic and political and cultural commentator. He is best known for (3) ... novels *Animal Farm* and *Nineteen Eighty-Four*, (4) ... both of which were written and published toward ... end of his life. He chose (5) ... name George Orwell in (6) ... early 1930s when his first book, *Down and Out in Paris and London*, was published. This book describes what it was like to be (7) ... poor and (8) ... homeless in Britain, and also described (9) ... time he spent in Paris

working in (10) ... kitchen of (11) ... high-class hotel. (12) ...Orwell's father was (13) ... civil servant in India, and Orwell grew up in (14) ... middle-class family. He was (15) ... pupil at Eton, (16) ... well-known English school, and as his family could not afford to send him to university, he joined (17) ... Indian Imperial Police. He learnt (18) ... lot about the British Empire, but came to hate (19) ... job, and in 1927 he resigned and decided to become (20) ... writer. He worked as (21) ... schoolteacher, and in (22) ... bookshop, wrote (23) ... book about (24) ... poverty in northern England (*The Road to Wigon Pier*) and also fought for (25) ... Republican side in (26) ... Spanish civil war. He developed (27) ... career as (28) ... journalist and reviewer, and during (29) ... Second World War he made (30) ... regular broadcasts on (31) ... BBC. He died of (32) ... tuberculosis in 1950 at (33) ... age of 46.

### **Exercise 2. Correct the errors in these sentences.**

1. It's not a first-class accommodation unless it has a private bathroom.
2. On this record twins play piano duet.
3. The halfway through meal we realized what waiter had said.
4. If the Mrs. Hillier phones, say I'm away on trip.
5. There is a wonderful scenery in eastern part of Turkey.
6. Cocker spaniel is one of most popular pet dogs.
7. There is going to be fog and a cold weather all the next week.
8. I spent very interesting holiday at Lake Coniston in England.
9. We are against war in general, so of course we are against war like this between superpower and developing country.
10. The burglaries are definitely on increase.

### **Exercise 3. Translate into English paying attention to the use of articles.**

1. Мне надо купить почтовую открытку.
2. Это было высокое белое здание: позади здания располагался большой сад.
3. Кукушка – ленивая птица.
4. Они опоздали на поезд, и им пришлось долго ждать следующего (поезда).
5. Большинство раненных были спокойны.
6. Серебряный месяц сиял на небе.
7. Он работает по 12 часов в день.
8. Мы вошли в маленькую комнатку, где стояли только стол и два стула.
9. Женщину справедливо называют душой семьи.
10. «Кто эта девушка, которая разговаривает с твоей мамой?» – «Это Вероника, моя двоюродная сестра. Она студентка экономического университета».
11. Он принял неизбежное.
12. «Нашла ли полиция того человека, который украл твой мотоцикл?» – «Харлей Дэвидсон? К сожалению, нет».

13. В комнате очень холодно. Закрой, пожалуйста, окно.
14. У кошки девять жизней.
15. Какие вкусные конфеты ты купил!
16. Я уже прочитал книгу, которую ты мне дал на прошлой неделе.
17. Пожилые люди не часто чувствуют себя молодыми.
18. Ближайшая аптека находится недалеко от дома Ника, в двух минутах ходьбы.
19. Он просил о невозможном.
20. Встретились однажды журавль и лиса.

### ARTICLES WITH ABSTRACT NOUNS

Abstract nouns can be countable (*answer, idea, lie*) and uncountable (*friendship, knowledge, influence*). The use of articles with countable abstract nouns is practically the same as with concrete countable nouns. The use of the article with **uncountable abstract nouns** has its own peculiarities. Let's dwell on them:

**The basic rule** is that uncountable abstract nouns take **the Zero Article** (in its **generic** function).

*(-) Poverty can lead to (-) unhappiness and (-) despair.*

**The Zero Article** also preserves its generic function when uncountable abstract nouns are modified by descriptive attributes denoting:

- 1) nationality and geography (*Russian, French, English, Moscow, etc.*);  
*It's three o'clock by (-) Moscow time.*
- 2) time, often historical periods (*contemporary, modern, ancient, daily, further, etc.*);  
*They talked about (-) modern poetry.*
- 3) degree (*perfect, great, complete, sufficient, etc.*);  
*It gives me (-) great pleasure.*
- 4) authenticity (*true, authentic, false, real, etc.*);  
*For once he showed (-) real irritation.*
- 5) position or locality (*outside, inside, inner, local, etc.*);  
*Many Eastern breathing practices help you develop (-) inner peace.*
- 6) social and spiritual characteristics (*social, public, moral, political*);  
*It was not a mark of (-) political correctness, but of (-) social justice.*
- 7) various trends and genres in art (*dramatic, theatrical, classical, romantic, etc.*);  
*He is fond of (-) classical music.*
- 8) man's manner or behaviour (*polite, formal, nervous, serious, etc.*);  
*Have you ever had (-) formal education in design or new media?*

**BUT** the definite article may be used in combination with the limiting of-phrase: *the Russian literature of that period, the French poetry of the 19<sup>th</sup> century.*

**The Zero Article** is also used in particular syntactic structures (even if they have descriptive attributes):

- 1) in attributive prepositional phrases (usually introduced by *of*);

*His face bore a look of (-) cold approval.*

*His flush of (-) anger died in a minute.*

- 2) in adverbial prepositional phrases of manner (usually introduced by *with* and *in*).

*The old man looked at the boy with (-) curiosity.*

*Ann examined everything about her with (-) great care.*

*She smiled in (-) sudden shyness.*

**The Indefinite Article** (in its **aspective** function) is used:

- 1) when uncountable abstract nouns are modified by a descriptive attribute or by a descriptive attributive clause that presents a particular **aspect** of a quality, feeling, state, etc.;

*There was a reflective silence.*

*His face had a calmness that was new to her.*

In its aspective use the indefinite article can be rendered into Russian as «некий», «какой-то».

*There was an unexplained bitterness in her voice. В ее голосе была какая-то необъяснимая горечь.*

- 2) when uncountable abstract nouns are modified by attributes *certain, peculiar, curious*;

*Then the two women slided at each other with a curious tenderness.*

*She spoke to strangers with a peculiar intimacy.*

*A curious sensation overwhelmed her.*

- 3) in particular syntactic structures – in the constructions with the formal *it* and after *what* and *such* (with the nouns *pity, shame, relief, disgrace, pleasure, comfort, disappointment*);

*It's a shame. What a disgrace!*

- 4) with nouns *business, education, knowledge* modified by a descriptive attribute

*The position requires a strong knowledge of French.*

**The Definite Article** precedes abstract nouns (in its **specifying** function) when specified by:

- 1) **the situation**

*Andrew was the first to break the silence.*

## 2) **the context**

*It was very still in the house. Suddenly a faint sound could be heard in **the stillness**.*

## 3) **a restrictive attribute** (expressed by an *of*-phrase or a restrictive attributive clause)

***The hope** of finding a cure for cancer drives a lot of medical research.*

*I am satisfied with **the education** I received from my university.*

**The Definite Article** is also used with substantivized adjectives denoting abstract notions (in its **generic** function): *the unusual, the ordinary, the unknown, the future, the inevitable*, etc.

*'You shouldn't think you are something out of **the ordinary**', she said.*

Such adjectives agree with the singular form of the verb.

***The unknown** has always attracted me.*

Mind that the presented rules are applied to nouns that are uncountable in English but have countable Russian equivalents: *advice, permission, research, homework, housework, evidence, toast, lightning, scenery*, etc.

*She gave me (-) **advice** but I didn't listen.*

*I've got (-) **permission** to go.*

## **Examples of comments**

### 1. (-) **Poverty** can lead to unhappiness and despair.

The zero article is used with an uncountable abstract noun in its generic function.

### 2. They talked about (-) modern poetry.

The zero article is used with an uncountable abstract noun modified by a descriptive attribute denoting time. The article is used in its generic function.

### 3. There was **a** reflective silence.

The indefinite article 'a' is used with an uncountable abstract noun modified by a descriptive attribute in its aspective function. A certain aspect is meant.

### 4. She spoke to strangers with **a** peculiar intimacy.

The indefinite article 'a' is used with an uncountable abstract noun modified by the attribute 'peculiar' in its aspective function.

### 5. Andrew was the first to break **the silence**.

The definite article is used with an uncountable noun in the singular in its specifying function. The specification is provided by the situation.

### 6. **The unknown** has always attracted me.

The definite article is used with a substantivized adjective denoting an abstract notion. The article is used in its generic function.

### Exercise 1. Comment on the use of articles with abstract nouns.

1. She had attached herself to *youth* and *hope* and *seriousness* and now they had failed her more than *age* and *despair*.
2. Harry rested in *the certainty* that his duty was to set an example of kindness.
3. His face had *a calmness* that was new to him.
4. There was a look of such deep *loneliness* on her mother's face that Lucy felt her heart turn over in pity.
5. *The ownership* of the land was less important to him than *the work and sweat* he had put into it.
6. *An instinctive kindness* made him want to protect Gorin.
7. After dinner, of which he ate little, thinking with dreary *satisfaction* how grief destroys appetite, he went round to see his confessor.
8. She began the life which she was sure would give her perfect *happiness*.
9. He had been brought up to admire French *culture*.
10. There is in the streets of Paris *a peculiar vitality* which excites the blood and prepares the soul for *the unexpected*.

### Exercise 2. Supply the required article.

1. He went back home with ... bitterness he had never known before.
2. This thought gave him ... immense satisfaction.
3. There was ... refinement in his face and ... spirituality that was oddly moving.
4. She thought that Francis would give her ... happiness Guy couldn't.
5. Everyone hates to have to go out in ... rainy weather.
6. When I had received the invitation I felt ... certain curiosity.
7. With ... mock gallantry he took her hand and leaned over to kiss it.
8. There was ... quick, startled wonder in her eyes.
9. That morning ... nature was at its loveliest.
10. He was ashamed of ... harshness that leapt to his tongue.
11. He wanted to give his son ... good education.
12. He rose from ... chair and stood by ... window in ... agitated silence.
13. She went back to bed feeling ... curious emptiness.
14. Oh, this is not ... friendly advice.
15. He spoke with ... slow earnestness and his habitually solemn face had ... outraged look.
16. I had ... terrible youth though my father was ... great man.
17. Your friend is ... great fun.

### Exercise 3. Choose the correct variant.

1. However, I don't propose to discuss *a / the / –* politics, *a / the / –* sociology or *a / the / –* metaphysics with you.
2. I was wrapped in *a / the / –* security of *a / the / –* childhood.

3. In *a / the / –* acute distress I turned to the window.
4. He could tell a story with *a / the / –* dramatic intensity.
5. After dinner, of which he ate little, thinking with *a / the / –* dreary satisfaction how *a / the / –* grief destroys *a / the / –* appetite, he went round to see his confessor.
6. The rest of the meeting passed without *a / the / –* interruption.
7. We were having *a / the / –* spring weather when it began to freeze again.
8. Anthony read the book with *a / the / –* most passionate attention.
9. *A / The / –* work got done somehow and she never troubled her head as to how.
10. *A / The / –* hospitality was *a / the / –* passion with him.
11. Each moment was sensually enhanced because of *a / the / –* love inside me.
12. He nodded and turned his eyes away with a sense of *a / the / –* guilty discomfort.
13. The dilemma we are in is of *a / the / –* greatest importance.
14. I think that we must all have *a / the / –* feeling of *a / the / –* profound satisfaction.
15. She talked about herself with *a / the / –* frankness that startled me.

**Exercise 4. Supply the required articles, paying special attention to uncountable abstract nouns.**

1. He spoke with ... awkwardness of ... man unused to words.
2. During his first talk with them he felt ... certain uneasiness.
3. He put the situation before her, weighing ... pros and cons with ... unflinching impartiality.
4. When I heard ... news I felt ... perfect relief.
5. ... kindness was not one of ... things she had normally met with in ... life.
6. In ... tone of ... most extreme politeness he said: 'I think we had better go downstairs.'
7. ... courage and ... resourcefulness of ... women perpetually amazed him.
8. ... humour teaches ... tolerance.
9. I have ... greatest admiration for Racine.
10. ... music and ... philosophy are like ... wine – they are intended to enhance ... pleasure of being alive.
11. At that early hour ... glassy sea often had ... immobility which seemed to make all ... earthy sorrows of little consequence.
12. He arranged everything with ... competence.
13. As she learned to understand him better she discovered ... rare sensitiveness that lay under his aggressive manner.
14. For ... next two days he was in ... state of ... greatest excitement.
15. He was sorry to leave his friend in ... comparative poverty.

**Exercise 5. Use the right article paying special attention to abstract nouns.**

1. He has ... deep knowledge of mathematics.
2. You can't do any work without ... knowledge.
3. ... life is ... complicated matter.
4. Lord, what ... hectic life!
5. Ken feels that ... job satisfaction is more than ... money.
6. It seems to me Englishmen show ... deep distrust of strangers.
7. ... work gave me ... increasing pleasure
8. He can give you ... good piece of ... advice. He is fond of giving ... advice. –  
But ... advice he gave us didn't help.
9. The patient was making ... noticeable progress.
10. You can be satisfied with ... progress you have made.
11. What ... wonderful news! I'd like to propose ... toast to my daughter's future marriage!
12. I often listen to ... music and I like ... jazz best.
13. ... time is ... great healer.
14. What ... kicking news! Who brought ... message?
15. What ... fine weather we're having today!

**Exercise 6. Fill each gap with one of the nouns. In three sentences you will need to add *the*.**

<i>poetry</i>	<i>chaos</i>	<i>progress</i>	<i>fortune</i>	<i>strength</i>
<i>dudgeon</i>	<i>beauty</i>	<i>frustration</i>	<i>violence</i>	<i>advice</i>

1. ... is said to be skin-deep.
2. If you ask, I'm sure your uncle will give you sound ... .
3. Marta's been known to dabble in lyrical ... .
4. My next-door neighbour feels ... of not having worked for three years.
5. Domestic ... is a frightening concept.
6. The protest meeting ended in total ... .
7. Carlos has proverbial ... of a lion.
8. Steady ... is being made.
9. At the concert Anna had good ... to be sitting close to the stage.
10. The foreman stomped off in high ... .

**Exercise 7. Tick (V) the sentences which are acceptable. Correct the mistakes in any that are not.**

1. This new research is venturing into the unknown.
2. You are asking me to do the impossible: I simply can find them.
3. This is an ultimate in chocolate cake.
4. I am asking you to resign for the good of the company.

5. Of the two, former is my preference.
6. For a Hollywood film is definitely out of ordinary.
7. The supernatural are something I've always been interested in.
8. Out with the old; bring in the new.
9. In that case, a latter is fine for me.
10. The evil that men do live after them.

**Exercise 8. In the following sentences *the* is missing in one or more cases. Write in *the* where necessary.**

1. There are countless varieties of English in use in English-speaking world.
2. Concepts of language vary from country to country and from generation to generation; English you hear spoken nowadays is in no way recognisable as language used by last generation, let alone in time of Shakespeare.
3. Government is now insisting that mathematics is taught with methods reminiscent of 1950s.
4. Government is only possible if majority accept law of land.
5. When Julie walked into room, you could have cut atmosphere with a knife.
6. Music of today deserves a different name from music of Beethoven, Bach and other comparable geniuses.
7. People living inside Arctic Circle have a very different view of year from those living in, say, Belgium.
8. Many people in public sector of work are just looking for sun, sand and relaxation when they go on holiday, and why not?

**Exercise 9. Put a line through all the articles that are not wanted in these sentences.**

1. Thank a goodness that she has escaped without a harm to a life or a limb.
2. In the times gone by, the marriage was often a matter of the luck.
3. It was a love at the first sight that brought the couple together.
4. A man has always struggled with the dichotomy of the security of the permanence and the quest for the change.
5. Being on a duty for seventy hours certainly gives you a taste of what the life as a doctor is like.

**Exercise 10. Correct the mistakes if it is necessary.**

1. I feel a real fear as I watch Robert suffering.
2. The music and philosophy are like wine – they are intended to enhance a pleasure of being alive.
3. He spoke of it with a boyish eagerness.
4. His confession forced upon me the truth that I had never permitted myself to see.
5. The doubt is the essence of the excitement.

6. The woman was on her feet with swiftness amazing in person of her age.
7. I was trying not to think about the work I was set to do.
8. He enjoyed warmth of her approval.
9. Dave played the piano with peculiar delicacy.
10. We hid his watch for fun.
11. He arranged everything with a competence.
12. He observed his guest with an amused detachment.
13. My first inclination was not to give it serious attention.
14. It's a hard work, but it has to be done.
15. He was sorry to leave his friend in a comparative poverty.

### **Out-of-class Work**

#### **Exercise 1. Insert the correct article.**

1. I felt ... malicious delight at ... absurdity of his position.
2. 'Congratulations. That was ... very smart work altogether,' he said.
3. His eyes were so dark that the iris made one colour with the pupil and this gave them ... peculiar intensity.
4. He sometimes referred to his daughter marriage with ... gloom.
5. We have been having ... frosty weather for a week.
6. ... advice he had got from most of his friends was to turn down ... offer.
7. ... ancient jealousy invaded his heart.
8. We hid his watch for ... fun.
9. 'I didn't work there long. I fell ill and had to give up the job.' 'That's ... hard luck.'
10. Holden believed that his people could create ... society in which ... men could live in ... peace and in ... decent comfort.

#### **Exercise 2. Supply the required articles in the following contexts.**

1. Every day there is (1) ... news of another war breaking out somewhere in (2) ... world. Clausewitz claimed that (3) ... war is (4) ... continuation of (5) ... government by other means, but is it necessary? The First World War is often used, especially by (6) ... pacifists, as (7) ... example of (8) ... unjustifiable war: the European powers allied themselves with each other and for five years killed each other in appalling conditions. What makes (9) ... society indulge in such (10) ... extraordinary behaviour? Is it simply in (11) ... nature of (12) ... man to fight? Under any circumstances can (13) ... violence ever be justified?

2. I had (1) ... hard time getting to (2) ... work (3) ... other day. (4) ... police were blocking off (5) ... main road after (6) ... accident. On (7) ... radio, (8) ... local traffic news was talking about (9) ... complete chaos on (10) ... roads everywhere. I calmly sat in my car with (11) ... patience I never knew I had. After all, (12) ... experience of sitting in (13) ... car going nowhere is, I reflected, starting to play (14) ... increasing part in all our lives.

### Exercise 3. Translate into English paying attention to the use of articles with abstract nouns.

1. К тому времени, когда он дошел до дома, гнев прошел, но страх еще остался.
2. Успех улучшает характер.
3. Во время путешествия у нас была теплая, сухая погода.
4. Какое блаженство сидеть в холодную погоду дома с чашкой горячего чая!
5. С ней можно говорить о чем угодно: об искусстве, музыке, литературе, живописи.
6. Необходимость вынуждала его усваивать язык быстрее, чем это казалось возможным.
7. Человек не может жить без общества.
8. В его голосе была нежность, которая тронула его.
9. Я очень мало знаю о древней скульптуре.
10. Природа играет большую роль в творчестве художника.
11. Плохие новости быстро распространяются.
12. В ее голосе была какая-то нежность.
13. Музыкант должен знать историю оперы.
14. Ему не нравилась нежность, с которой она обращалась с Вами.
15. Как быстро невообразимое стало реальностью!
16. Я люблю русскую литературу XIX века.
17. Этому человеку не хватает решительности.
18. У него было терпение, которое изумляло всех.
19. В глазах собаки было истинное понимание.
20. Ты хочешь совет? Хорошо, один совет я могу тебе дать.

### ARTICLES WITH PROPER NAMES Articles with Personal Names

#### The Zero Article (-)

personal names	<i>David, Mr. Brown, Mr. Murphy, Uncle John</i>
personal names preceded by a title	<i>Professor Smith, Queen Elizabeth II, Colonel Jones</i> <b>BUT</b> <i>the Queen, the President, the Prime Minister</i>
personal names modified by <i>old, young, little, poor, dear, honest</i>	<i>You don't approve of <b>poor Thornton</b>?</i>
Names of family relationship used by the members of the family, such as <i>Mother, Father, Aunt, Uncle, Baby, Nurse, Cook Grandmother, Grandfather</i>	<i><b>Mother</b> is still resting.</i> <i><b>But:</b> Bring <b>the mother</b> to university – we have to discuss your academic performance with her.</i>

## The Definite Article (*the*)

personal names in the plural to indicate the whole family	<i><b>The Bentons</b> are a nice couple. <b>The Millers</b> don't have any dogs or cats.</i>
personal names used to indicate smb <u>known</u> to the hearer	<i>I met Paul McCartney the other day. – Do you mean <b>the Paul McCartney</b>? (от самый Пол Маккартни)</i>
personal names preceded by common nouns (as a rule, they denote a job, nationality or belief)	<i><b>The artist Stubbs</b> painted mostly horses. <b>The girl Marry</b> was a good student.</i>
personal names modified by a <u>restrictive attribute</u>	<i>I had changed from <b>the Lallie</b> <u>he had known in autumn</u>. Now she was more like <b>the Julia</b> <u>of their first years of marriage</u>.</i>
personal names modified by a <u>descriptive attribute</u> which indicates a <u>permanent quality</u> of a person	<i><b>The late Mr. Jones</b> was a nice man. Why don't we ask this question <b>the clever James</b>?</i>

## The Indefinite Article (*a / an*)

personal names used to indicate a representative of a family	<i>How did you know I was <b>a Rush</b>?</i>
personal names used to indicate smb <u>unknown</u> to the hearer; the adjective 'certain' is sometimes used	<i>I am spending the day with <b>a Miss Warren</b>. (= некий, какой-то) There was <b>a certain Lord Henry</b> there.</i>
personal names modified by a <u>descriptive attribute</u> which indicates a <u>temporary characteristic</u> of a person	<i>He was met at the door by <b>an angry Isabel</b>.</i>
personal names when used as common nouns which indicate: 1) concrete objects 2) smb associated with a well-known name	<i>They drove out in <b>an old Ford</b>. He is <b>a true Casanova</b>.</i>

## Examples of comments

1. *There was a letter from (-) **Professor Smith**.*  
The definite article is used with a proper noun denoting a personal name preceded by a title.
2. *Young Jolyon listened to the music with his dim smile.*  
The definite article is used with a proper noun denoting a personal name and modified by the attribute 'young'.
3. *He didn't even know **the Chapins** has a daughter.*  
The definite article is used with a plural proper noun denoting a personal name to indicate the whole family.

4. *Is he **the Kenyon** who is a writer?*

The definite article is used with a proper noun denoting in its specifying function. The specification is carried out by means of a restrictive attributive clause.

5. *He was met at the door by **an angry Isabel**.*

The indefinite article is used with a proper noun denoting a personal name and modified by a descriptive attribute. The attribute indicates a temporary characteristic of a person.

6. *How did you know I was **a Rush**?*

The indefinite article is used with a proper noun denoting a personal name. The personal name indicates a representative of a family.

7. *He is **a true Casanova**.*

The indefinite article goes together with a proper name used as a common countable noun in the singular and indicates somebody associated with a well-known name. The function of the article is classifying.

**Exercise 1. Comment on the use of articles with personal names.**

1. He told an anecdote about *Stern*. As soon as Dave realized that the reference was to *the Stern* of the famous Stern-Geralch experiment, his ears pricked up.
2. At that moment they were interrupted by *the gentle Mrs. Shobbe*.
3. Old *Anthony* met me at the station.
4. She felt like *an Alice* in Wonderland.
5. She went into the hall: 'Is *Nurse* back?'
6. At a table in a corner the Colonel was introduced to *a Mrs. Bilst* and *a Mrs. Peck*.
7. In the kitchen *a* tearful *Doris* was wilting under the stern reproof of her mother.
8. I have often wondered if Arthur was really *a Burton*.
9. I am going to have supper with *the Robertses*.
10. Lanny has sold them *an* especially fine *Goya*.
11. She was engaged to *a* certain *George Reed*.

**Exercise 2. Supply the required article.**

1. Professor, there is ... certain Alexander Taylor waiting for you in the hall.
2. You are like ... Figaro. One minute here, another there.
3. You are not ... Andrew Manson I married.
4. She has ... Rembrandt in her private collection.
5. He was met at the door by ... angry Isabel, who demanded to know what he meant by coming home at that hour.
6. The prize is to be given each year in memory of ... late Ann Slacks.
7. ... old Mrs. Jones was always picking on ... poor Amy.

8. I miss the time when ... Father and ... Mother would spend the whole evening with us, kids.
9. ... dear old Emily sent the children a doll's house.
10. ... Linda I knew ten years ago turned into a beautiful lady.
11. He saw that ... clever Mr. Stone wanted to moralize a little.
12. ... Professor Smith was introduced to ... President himself.
13. ... poor Edward muttered something, but what it was nobody knew.
14. ... little Emily wanted to play in the garden.
- 15.... gentle, tender-hearted Amelia Sedley was the only person to whom she could attach herself.

**Exercise 3. Choose the correct article.**

1. Can I introduce Janet Dunlop / the Janet Dunlop?
2. There is John Spence / a John Spence waiting to see you in the office.
3. Prince Phillip / The Prince Phillip is also known as Duke of Edinburgh / the Duke of Edinburgh.
4. Roosvelts / The Roosvelts have provided America with two presidents.
5. There's been Parkinson / a Parkinson in this village for generations.
6. 'Isn't that Richard Nixon over there? – 'You mean, Richard Nixon / the Richard Nixon?'
7. Johnes / The Johnes and Smith / the Smith are two common British surnames.
8. Watermans / The Watermans? Oh yes, we know them well.

**Exercise 4. Compare the following sentences and fill in the gaps with *a*, *the* or (-).**

1. A) ... certain Peter Johnson called you when you were out.  
B) ... Peter Johnson is a very old friend of mine.  
C) Are you talking about ... Peter Johnson who is a banker.
2. A) She is not ... Meredith I used to know at school.  
B) He looked at ... embarrassed Meredith and hastily apologized.  
C) Have you met my sister Meredith before?
3. A) ... poor old Harry gambled away all his money.  
B) Look who is there! ... famous Harry!  
C) ... Harry Hamilton wants to see you. Do you know him?
4. A) If you are ... Napoleon you'll play for power.  
B) ... Napoleon was sent into exile and spent the rest of his life on the island of Saint Helena.  
C) ... Napoleon we had at the café was superb.
5. A) ... Keatons are away on holiday.  
B) She was ... Keaton and like all of them she was very stubborn.  
C) Her last name is ... Keaton.

6. A) The art gallery used to own ... Van Gogh.  
B) *The Starry Night*, the best work of ... Van Gogh, was painted by him in a French asylum for neurological patients.  
C) ... Van Gogh I saw at the exhibition struck me most of all.
7. A) – Has ... Mother come back? – Not yet.  
B) To be ... mother is a full-time job.  
C) ‘Ask ... mother to come to the school’, said the headmistress.
8. A) He is ... chemistry professor at the local college.  
B) When I entered the classroom, ... professor had already started explaining a new topic.  
C) – Who is lecturing today? – ... Professor Williams.
9. A) She was once ... beauty queen.  
B) ... Queen Elizabeth II was born in 1926.  
C) Each session of Parliament is opened by ... Queen.
10. A) No wonder that the dress costs a fortune – it’s ... Chanel!  
B) ... Chanel is the only fashion designer listed on *Time* magazine’s list of the 100 most influential people of the 20<sup>th</sup> century.  
C) ... Chanel I bought last year doesn’t fit me any more.

### **Out-of-class Work**

#### **Exercise 1. Correct the mistakes if necessary.**

1. I saw the Senator Chase.
2. There’s Linda Jones to see you.
3. Lopezes live in Fort Lee.
4. A special award was given to the film director Ingmar Bergman.
5. That surely can’t be Jenny Watson we knew in Zimbabwe.
6. I didn’t realize how rich he was until I heard he owns Picasso.
7. He was a lawyer, Mr. Reid from Melbourne.
8. A Major Wilby and a lovely Mabel departed.
9. A little Lily wanted to play with a cat.
10. A certain Mrs. Smith rang me up today but she had dialed the wrong number.

#### **Exercise 2. Translate into English paying attention to the use of articles with personal names.**

1. Он решил сходить к Петровым.
2. Бедная Миссис Смит была в растерянности.
3. Мой муж ревнив, он настоящий Отелло.

4. Великий Моцарт оказал большое влияние на мировую музыкальную культуру.
5. Ты знаком с некой Розмари? – Розмари? Единственная Розмари, которую я знаю, – это Розмари Пейн.
6. Малышка Бетти играла во дворе около сада Сидоровых.
7. Испуганная Мэри вбежала в комнату.
8. Какая классная сумка! – Неудивительно, ведь это Гучи.
9. «Сынок, подожди, отец сейчас придет», – сказала мама.
10. Смиты поселились здесь два года тому назад.
11. С Вами хочет поговорить некий Петров. – А, это, наверное, Петров, с которым я встретился вчера в доме Павловых.
12. Писатель Моэм родился в конце XIX века.
13. Что это за картина? – Мне кажется, это Рубенс.
14. Бедняжка Мэри расстроилась, когда узнала, что Брауны не пригласили ее на званый обед.
15. Обиженная Патрисия ушла в свою комнату.
16. Лорд Сэндвич изобрел бутерброд.
17. Малыш Никита играл во дворе со своей бабушкой.
18. Я уже не та Ирина, с которой ты ходил в школу. Я выросла.
19. На этой стоянке припарковано несколько машин: Мерседес, Хонда, Линкольн, Форд и старенький Москвич.
20. О каком Брауне ты сейчас говоришь? – О Брауне, который в прошлом году разбил твое окно.

## ARTICLES WITH GEOGRAPHICAL NAMES

### The Zero Article (-)

names of continents	<i>Europe, Asia, Antarctica, Africa, North America, South America, India, China, Spain, Holland</i> <b>BUT</b> <i>the Arctic, the Antarctic</i> (regions)
most names of countries	<i>Russia, Germany, Japan, Turkey, India, Pakistan, Bangladesh, Mexico, Guatemala, Great Britain, France, Belarus, Brazil, Canada, Egypt</i>
cities, towns, states and <b>administrative</b> regions	<i>London, Minsk, Edinburgh, Cardiff, Belfast, Boston, Albany, Buffalo, Paris, Berlin Sydney, Rome, Vienna, Venice, Brussels, Madrid, San Francisco, Cairo, Luxor, Constantinople, Massachusetts, New Jersey, New York State, Texas, Bergen County, Marin County, Florida, England, Scotland, Wales, Northern Ireland, Tuscany, Bavaria, Ohio</i> Mind (-) <i>Vatican City</i> but <i>the Vatican</i> Mind the pattern <b>the + common noun + proper noun</b> : <i>the City of Leeds, the City of Prague</i>

names of continents, countries, cities, towns, states and administrative regions when modified by <u>attributes</u> describing them from a <u>geographical</u> or <u>historical</u> point of view	<i>Northern Europe, Central Africa, Asia Minor, Central Asia, modern France, industrial Yorkshire, ancient Rome, Medieval Europe</i>
names of <b>individual</b> mountains and hills	<i>Mount Vesuvius, Mount Everest, Mount Washington, Mont Blanc, Box Hill, Elbrus</i> <b>BUT</b> mind the pattern <b><i>the</i> + common noun + proper noun</b> : <i>the Mount of Olives</i>
names of <b>individual</b> islands	<i>Bermuda, Cyprus, Java, Cuba</i> <b>BUT</b> mind the pattern <b><i>the</i> + common noun + proper noun</b> : <i>the Isle of Man</i>
names of peninsulas (the word 'peninsula' is <b>not</b> mentioned)	<i>Labrador</i> <b>BUT</b> <i>the Hindustan peninsula</i>
names of lakes, bays, beaches, capes, falls which are usually accompanied by <i>Lake, Bay, Beach, Cape, Falls</i>	<i>Lake Ontario, Lake Superior, Lake Michigan, Lake Huron, Lake Erie, Lake Geneva, Lake Baikal, Lake Victoria, San Francisco Bay, Palm Beach, Cape Cod, Victoria Falls</i> <b>BUT</b> <i>the Great Salt Lake</i> and mind the pattern <b><i>the</i> + common noun + proper noun</b> <i>the Lake of Geneva, the Bay of Biscay, the Cape of Good Hope</i>

### The Definite Article (*the*)

countries with plural names and with <i>Republic, Kingdom, United</i> , etc.	<i>the Netherlands, the Philippines, the Czech Republic, the United States, the United Arab Emirates, the Republic of Ireland, the United Kingdom, the USA, the Soviet Union, the People's Republic of China, the Roman Empire</i>
names of some countries can take both: the zero article (-) and the definite article ( <i>the</i> )	<i>(the) Sudan, (the) Yemen, (the) Congo, (the) Ivory Coast, (the) Lebanon, (the) Senegal, (the) Ukraine, the Argentine / Argentina</i>
names of <b>geographical</b> regions	<i>the Crimea, the Caucasus, the Ruhr, the Riviera, the Middle East, the Far East, the Midlands</i>
names of cities (exception)	<i>the Hague</i>
names of mountain <b>ranges</b> and <b>groups</b> of hills	<i>the Alps, the Urals, the Andes, the Rocky Mountains, the Himalayas, the Grampians, the Cambrian Mountains, the Pennines, the Cordilleras, the Pyrenees</i>
names of <b>groups</b> of islands	<i>the Bermudas, the Canaries, the West Indies, the Azores, the Seychelles, the Bahamas, the Channel Islands, the Balearic Islands, the Canary Islands</i>

names of peninsulas (the word 'peninsula' is mentioned)	<i>the Balkan Peninsula, the Kola Peninsula, the Apennine / Italian Peninsula</i>
names of <b>groups</b> of lakes	<i>the Great American Lakes, the Arrow Lakes</i>
names of oceans, seas, rivers, straits, channels, canals	<i>the Atlantic (Ocean), the Indian (Ocean), the Pacific Ocean, the Arctic Ocean, the Adriatic (Sea), the Baltic (Sea), the Tasman (Sea), the Mediterranean (Sea), the Caspian (Sea), the Irish Sea, the North Sea, the Red Sea, the Sea of Japan, the Bosphorus Sea, the Tyrrhenian Sea, the Gulf of Mexico, the (River) Nile, the (River) Congo, the Mohawk River, the Thames, the Severn, the Humber, the Mersey, the Rhine, the (River) Seine, the Tiber, the Amur, the Missouri River, the Mississippi River, the Bering Strait, the English Channel, the Panama Canal, the Barge Canal, the Suez Canal</i>
names of deserts	<i>the Sahara, the Gobi, the Kara-Kum, the Mojave</i>
geographical names modified by a restrictive attribute or a restrictive attributive clause	<i>The graduates are happy to see <b>the Cambridge</b> of their youth again. It was <b>the Britain</b> he spent his childhood in.</i>

### The Indefinite Article (*a / an*)

geographical names modified by a descriptive attribute	<i>We now have <b>a new Britain</b>, confident, optimistic... It was <b>a different Paris</b>, unknown to him.</i>
--	--

#### Examples of comments

1. *I want to explore (-) Asia.*

The definite article is used with a proper noun denoting the name of the continent.

2. *(-) Ancient Rome was founded by two brothers.*

The definite article is used with a proper noun denoting the name of the city and modified by an attribute. The attribute describes the noun from a historical point of view.

3. *It was **the Britain** he spent his childhood in*

The definite article is used with a proper noun in its specifying function. The specification is carried out by means of a restrictive attributive clause.

4. *We now have **a new Britain**, confident, optimistic...*

The indefinite article 'a' is used with a proper noun denoting a geographical name and modified by a descriptive attribute in its aspective function. A certain aspect is meant.

### **Exercise 1. Comment on the use of articles with geographical names.**

1. The Prime Minister's stated aim of keeping *Britain* at the heart of *Europe*.
2. Indeed, their power to agitate whole regions of *Central Africa* and parts of *South America* was remarkable.
3. People were killed at the Wild Coast Sun, a gambling resort overlooking *the Indian Ocean*.
4. *The City of Prague* is the capital and largest city in *the Czech Republic*.
5. *Lake Ontario* is a hundred and sixty nine feet below *Lake Erie*.
6. France, now firmly established on the Adriatic shore of *the Balkan Peninsula*, would be sympathetic to their claims.
7. Should one have chosen a more unusual location, such as *the Arctic* or *the Gobi Desert*?
8. Mountain goats live amidst the majestic, windswept heights and steep slopes of *the Rocky Mountains* of western *North America*.
9. In *the Paris* of the 1920s there had been a uniquely creative cultural underground.
10. There the horizon includes *Mont Blanc*, the highest mountain in *the Alps*, or in Europe.
11. Subscribe now and win a holiday in *Cuba*. And for every subscriber you win, we'll reward you with 10 additional chances.
12. They return to *Berlin* in 1945 to help build *a new Germany*.
13. *The Azores* is an archipelago composed of nine volcanic islands in the North Atlantic Ocean.

### **Exercise 2. Supply the required article.**

1. Ferguson has travelled everywhere from ... Central Asia to ... Arctic.
2. I've been to ... Brazil and ... Argentina, but I've never been to ... USA.
3. I'd love to do a tour of European capitals and visit ... London, ... Paris, and ... Vienna.
4. Karl was born in ... Bavaria, but he now lives in ... Ohio.
5. I've been climbing in ... Alps, but I've never managed to get up ... Mont Blanc.
6. A lot of people have tried to cross ... Sahara without being properly prepared.
7. I'd love to travel down ... Nile as far as ... Luxor.
8. There is a splendid view of ... Lake Geneva from this hotel.
9. It's in ... Tasman Sea.
10. They are flying to ... Seychelles.
11. I think ... Sicily is the largest island in ... Mediterranean.

12. Cairo is on ... River Nile.
13. We didn't have time to visit ... Louvre when we were in Paris.
14. ... south-west England is famous for its beautiful countryside and beaches.
15. ... Mount Everest is in ... Himalayas.

**Exercise 3. Choose the correct variant.**

1. The largest inland lake is Caspian Sea / the Caspian Sea.
2. Channel Islands / the Channel Islands are situated between England and France.
3. I've always wanted to visit India / the India.
4. The toy industry in China / the China is the biggest in the world.
5. There are 50 states in USA / the USA.
6. Edmund Hilary was the 1<sup>st</sup> man to climb Mount Everest / the Mount Everest.
7. Lake Victoria / the Lake Victoria is the largest lake in Africa / the Africa.
8. Panama Canal / the Panama Canal connects Atlantic Ocean / the Atlantic Ocean to Pacific Ocean / the Pacific Ocean.
9. Balearic Islands / the Balearic Islands are situated in Mediterranean Sea / the Mediterranean Sea.
10. Boston / the Boston is in Massachusetts / the Massachusetts.

**Out-of-class Work**

**Exercise 1. In some of these sentences *the* is not necessary. Write the correct variant in the boxes on the right, If the sentence is correct, put a tick (V). The first sentence is done for you as an example.**

1	The Asia and Africa are continents.	<i>Asia</i>
2	The Bergen County is in New Jersey.	
3	The Philippines were named after the Phillip II of Spain.	
4	The Great Lakes are far from the Rocky Mountains.	
5	Another name for the Holland is the Netherlands.	
6	The Sahara is a huge desert, bigger than the Mojave.	
7	Boats can go from the Albany to Buffalo using the Mohawk River and the Barge Canal.	
8	The English Channel separates Great Britain and France.	
9	Have you ever climbed the Mount Washington?	
10	We went to the Bahamas for our vacation.	
11	The Lake Erie is between New York State and Canada.	

**Exercise 2. A student wrote the following geographical description of Britain, but a computer error removed all the examples of *the*. Add *the* where it's necessary.**

United Kingdom is an island surrounded by English Channel, Atlantic, Irish Sea and North Sea. It is made up of four regions: England, Scotland, Wales and Northern Ireland, and although London is the capital of whole country, each region has its capital city (London, Edinburgh, Cardiff and Belfast). Best-known rivers are Thames, which flows through London, Severn which divides England and Wales, and in north of England, Humber and Mersey. Highest mountains in United Kingdom are found in Scotland (Grampians) and North Wales (Cambrian Mountains), while England's major range is called Pennines. English is spoken everywhere in Britain, although there are other languages such as Welsh and Gaelic, but there are also a lot of distinct regional accents.

**Exercise 3. Translate into English paying attention to the use of articles with geographical names.**

1. Балтийское море расположено в Северной Европе.
2. Кордильеры находятся в Северной Америке.
3. Берега Рейна очень живописны.
4. Озеро Байкал – самое глубокое озеро в мире.
5. Берингов пролив – пролив между Северным Ледовитым и Тихим океанами, который разделяет Азию и Северную Америку.
6. Зимой мы отдыхали в Объединённых Арабских Эмиратах.
7. Эльбрус – очень красивая гора.
8. Он только что вернулся из Центральной Африки.
9. Апеннинский полуостров – один из крупнейших полуостровов Европы, расположенный на юге континента и омываемый водами Средиземного моря.
10. Средиземное море находится между Европой, Азией и Африкой.
11. Пика своего могущества Древний Рим достиг во II веке н.э.
12. Альпы – самый высокий и протяженный горный хребет Европы.
13. Каракум – песчаная пустыня на юге Средней Азии.
14. Венеция расположена на берегу Адриатического моря.
15. На полуострове Индостан расположены значительная часть Индии, часть Пакистана и Бангладеш.
16. Гаага считается второй столицей Нидерландов.
17. Суэцкий канал – судоходный канал в Египте, соединяющий Средиземное и Красное моря.

18. К Великим озерам относятся пять крупнейших: Верхнее, Гурон, Мичиган, Эри и Онтарио.
19. Река Конго течет в Африке, не так ли?
20. На самом крайнем юго-востоке России, на берегах Японского моря и реки Амур расположен район, традиционно называемый Дальним Востоком.

## ARTICLES WITH MISCELLANEOUS PROPER NAMES

### The Zero Article (-)

names of most streets, roads, squares	<i>Park Lane, Oxford Street, Fifth Avenue, Abbey Road, Montague Road, Trafalgar Square, Downing Street, Baines Street, Tverskaya Street</i> <b>BUT:</b> (-) / <i>the Red Square</i> (The zero article is preferable.) <b>BUT:</b> <i>the High Street, the Mall, the Strand, the City of London</i>
names of parks and zoos	<i>Central Park, Hyde Park, St. James's Park, London Zoo</i> <b>BUT:</b> <i>the Botanical Gardens</i>
names of hotels, restaurants, clubs, pubs, shops named after people (ending in -s or 's)	<i>Harrods, Luigi's, McDonald's, Selfridges, Brown's, Leoni's, Turner's, Madame Tussaud's, Bloomingdales, Macy's</i>
names of airports and railway stations (usually named after <b>people or places</b> )	<i>Heathrow (Airport), Gatwick (Airport), Waterloo (Station), Oxford Circus (Station), John F. Kennedy International Airport, Stockholm Arlanda Airport, Miami International Airport</i>
names of bridges (usually named after <b>people or places</b> )	<i>Waterloo Bridge, Tower Bridge, London Bridge</i>
names of public buildings (named after <b>people or places</b> )	<i>Westminster Abbey, Buckingham Palace, St. Paul's Cathedral, St. Matthew's Church, Barclays Bank</i>
names of schools, universities and colleges (named after <b>people or places</b> )	<i>Bradford Grammar School, Merton College, Oxford University, Harvard University, Manchester University, Liverpool University</i> <b>BUT</b> mind the pattern <b>the + common noun + proper noun</b> : <i>the University of Oxford, the University of London, the University of Miami, the University of Indiana</i>
names of magazines and journals	<i>Cosmopolitan, Newsweek, Vogue, Time, Punch, Scientific American, Hello, Newsweek, Life</i> <b>BUT</b> magazine titles which express a job or function tend to have <i>the</i> : <i>the Spectator, the Economist, the New statesman, the New Yorker</i>

names of sporting events (named after <b>people or places</b> )	<i>Wimbledon (tennis), Ascot and Epsom (horse-racing), Henley (rowing)</i>
names of spacecraft, aircraft	<i>Appolo 17, Boeing 737</i>
names of holidays	<i>Christmas, Easter, Mother's Day, St. Valentine's Day</i>

### The Definite Article (*the*)

names of motorways and numbered roads	<i>the M25, the A1, the M1, the Oregon Trail</i>
museums, galleries, cinemas, theatres	<i>The British Museum, the Louvre, the Getty Museum, the Smithsonian Museum, the Archeological Museum, the State Tretyakov Gallery, the Odeon Cinema, the National Theatre, the Globe Theatre, the Bolshoi Theatre</i>
names of hotels, restaurants, clubs, pubs, shops	<i>The Ritz, the Grand Hotel, the Palace Hotel, the Hilton, the Jumbo Stay, the Watergate, the Copper Kettle, the Royal Oak, the National Liberal Club, the Central Department Store</i>
names of bridges (usually consisting of <b>common nouns</b> )	<i>the Golden Gate Bridge, the Brooklyn Bridge, the Bridge of Sighs, the Forth Bridge, the Millenium Bridge</i>
names of public buildings (usually consisting of <b>common nouns</b> )	<i>the White House, the Royal Exchange, the Old Bailey, the Tower, the Eiffel Tower, the Palace of Versailles, the Great Wall of China, the Blue Mosque, the Basilica of St. Paul, the Kremlin, the Mansion House</i>
names of schools, universities and colleges (usually consisting of <b>common nouns</b> )	<i>the Higher School of Economics, the Medical Academy, the Sorbonne</i>
names of political organizations and institutions	<i>The House of Commons, the Houses of Parliament, the Senate, the Cabinet, the Labour Party, the United Nations, the European Parliament, the International Monetary Fund, the World Bank, the Federal Reserve Bank, the BBC, the FBI</i> <b>BUT:</b> <i>Parliament (in the UK), Congress (in the USA)</i> <b>BUT</b> abbreviations pronounced as one word: <i>NATO, UNICEF</i>
newspapers	<i>The Times, the New York Times, the Herald Tribune, the Guardian, the Daily Telegraph, the Daily Mirror, the Washington Post, the Independent</i> Mind: <i>The Wall Street Journal</i> (It's a newspaper!!!) <b>BUT</b> foreign newspapers: <i>Pravda, Zvezda, Le Monde, Der Spiegel</i>
names of sporting events (usually consisting of <b>common nouns</b> )	<i>the Olympic Games, the World Cup</i>
names of ships, trains	<i>The Titanic, the Queen Elizabeth, the Orient Express</i>
historical periods and events	<i>the Middle Ages, the Dark Ages, the Enlightenment, the Renaissance, the French Revolution, the American Revolution</i>

### Examples of comments

1. *He lived in (-) Park Lane.*

The zero article is used with a proper noun denoting the name of the street.

2. *(-) Harrods is a department store located on Brompton Road.*

The zero article is used with a proper noun denoting the name of the shop that ends in -s.

3. *I would like to visit the National Theatre.*

The definite article is used with a proper noun denoting the name of the theatre.

### Exercise 1. Comment on the use of articles with miscellaneous proper names.

1. Only two days after meeting Julie by the Serpentine in *Hyde Park* matters had come very quickly to a head.
2. *Selfridges* now offers the unusual jams, preserves, spices and other delicacies that have made Fauchon's name.
3. We finally broke up the team in the refreshment room of *Waterloo Station* after we had left the ship in Southampton.
4. South Africa was readmitted to *the Olympic Games* on March 27.
5. Hauser also was reading the reports but his newspaper was *the Herald Tribune*.
6. *The Getty Museum* is restricted for visitors.
7. But inside she was cringing at the memory of that appalling evening at *the Grand Hotel*.
8. In September we opened *the Globe Theatre*.
9. Eighteen years later Jean Genet commented that he could see the revolution couldn't work after a visit of *the Odeon*, occupied by students and workers.
10. But on his first proper account with Tolkien – at a meeting with English faculty colleagues at *Merton College* in May 1926 – he could not help being charmed by this 'smooth, pale, fluent little chap'.
11. On the same day the Transport Department announced plans to widen *the M25* around London.
12. At 19 she was married to an affluent US writer Mathews and she modelled on the cover of *Vogue*.
13. Tailor Walker's Thameside Barley Mow brewery was one of the landmarks of the river east of *Tower Bridge*.

### Exercise 2. Supply *the* or (-).

1. I've always understood ... Dark Ages to refer to specifically to ... Medieval Europe.
2. What's your address? – I live in ... Montague Road, number 27.
3. I could never afford to stay at hotels like ... Brown's or ... Hilton.

4. You can't visit ... London without seeing ... Buckingham Palace.
5. We had an early dinner at ... Leoni's and then went to a play at ... Globe Theatre.
6. Go down ... Oxford Street till you come to ... Oxford Circus, then turn right.
7. Do you know the song about ... London Bridge.
8. I like to read newspapers like ... *Times* and ... *Washington Post*.
9. I read ... *Economist* every week and ... *Time* magazine.
10. Do you think ... *New Yorker* and ... *Punch* have much in common?
11. A lot of people object to attempts to bring up ... *Titanic*.
12. ... United Nations may be a talking shop, but so is ... Congress.
13. France celebrated the 200<sup>th</sup> anniversary of ... French Revolution in 1989.
14. We arrived at ... Heathrow and got a taxi which took us to ... Oxford Street.
15. *Romeo and Juliet* is on at ... Globe Theatre.

**Exercise 3. Choose the correct variant.**

1. My local pub is called Royal Oak / the Royal Oak.
2. Raymond is a student at Manchester University / the Manchester University.
3. British Prime Minister / the British Prime Minister lives in Downing Street / the Downing Street.
4. Houses of Parliament / the Houses of Parliament are situated opposite Westminster Abbey / the Westminster Abbey.
5. One of the nicest parks in London / the London is St. James's Park / the St. James's Park, which is very near Buckingham Palace / the Buckingham Palace.
6. Barclays Bank / the Barclays Bank provides services to general public.
7. Have you ever visited Tower of London / the Tower of London?
8. Did you see the film at Odeon / the Odeon?
9. I know a good supermarket near here, it's Turner's / the Turner's in Baines Street / the Baines Street.
10. Their fathers, as it turned out, had studied at University of Oxford / the University of Oxford.

**Exercise 4. Put a line through all the articles that are not wanted in these sentences.**

1. We stayed at the Palace Hotel while we were in Madrid.
2. The M1 motorway was closed yesterday because of the floods.
3. The Hyde Park is one of the largest green spaces in London.
4. Mr. Murphy reads the Independent but his wife reads the Times.
5. We flew from Vienna to the Heathrow Airport.
6. Diana and Charles got married in the St. Matthew's Church.

7. You must visit the British Museum when you are in London.
8. The Madame Tussaud's is visited by most tourists of London.
9. If you want to buy some new clothes, the shop I would recommend is the Harrods.
10. Have you ever been to the McDonalds.

### **Out-of-class Work**

#### **Exercise 1. Correct the mistakes if there are any.**

1. We saw the Eiffel Tower when we were in Paris.
2. Last year I took a course at University of Miami in Florida.
3. The Central Park is bounded by the Fifth Avenue on the east.
4. Do you shop at Bloomingdales.
5. His favourite magazine is the Scientific American.
6. The Washington Post is a famous newspaper.
7. We studied about American Revolution in history class.
8. Soviet Union and People's Republic of China are two great world powers.
9. Hague is the capital of Netherlands.
10. The Golden Gate Bridge connects the San Francisco with the Marin County.

#### **Exercise 2. Translate into English paying attention to the use of articles with miscellaneous proper names.**

1. Вы когда-нибудь бывали в музее мадам Тюссо?
2. Какой фильм идет в кинотеатре «Беларусь»?
3. Фред учится в Ливерпульском университете.
4. После раннего обеда они отправились в театр «Глобус» посмотреть пьесу.
5. Наша группа прилетела в аэропорт имени Джона Кеннеди в два часа ночи.
6. Первый корабль «Королева Елизавета» был спущен на воду в 1938 году.
7. Букингемский дворец – официальная резиденция королевы Великобритании.
8. Стрэнд – центральная улица Лондона, соединяющая район Вестминстер с Сити.
9. Великая Китайская стена протянулась на тысячи километров.
10. Мост Золотые Ворота является одним из самых известных мостов в мире с символом Сан-Франциско.
11. Американский президент всегда живет в Белом доме.
12. Вблизи аэропорта Стокгольм-Арланда находится «Джамбо Хостел» – гостиница, обустроенная внутри списанного Боинга-747.

13. Собор Святого Павла в Лондоне спроектирован архитектором Кристофером Реном.
14. Среди достопримечательностей Москвы можно назвать Красную площадь, Кремль, Тверскую улицу, Большой театр и многое другое.
15. Газета «Вашингтон пост» опубликовала ряд статей о скандале, который случился в отеле «Уотергейт».
16. Раньше она читала только «Космополитен», теперь же предпочитает серьезные газеты, такие как «Гардиан» или «Дейли телеграф».
17. Когда она была студенткой, она часто перекусывала в Макдональдсе.
18. Гайд-парк расположен в самом центре Лондона. Давным-давно он принадлежал Вестминстерскому аббатству. Сейчас это любимое место отдыха жителей Лондона.
19. Вы были в Третьяковской галерее?
20. Невозможно представить поездку в Лондон без посещения Букингемского дворца.

### Mixed Practice

#### Exercise 1. Complete these sentences with *a / an, the* or (-).

1. It's the tallest building in ... United Arab Emirates.
2. Let's have a weekend in ... Pyrenees.
3. It's in ... Tasman Sea.
4. It appeared in ... *New York Times*.
5. I'll meet you in ... Central Park.
6. They are flying to ... Seychelles.
7. Can you ski on ... Mont Blanc.
8. She works for a magazine called ... *Hello*.
9. ... Gulf of Mexico is ... south of Texas.
10. My favourite magazines are ... *Time*, ... *Newsweek*, and ... *Life*.
11. ... Missouri River flows into ... Mississippi River.
12. We like to shop at ... Macy's.
13. ... Mexico is bounded by ... Pacific Ocean in the west, ... United States in the north, ... Gulf of Mexico in the east, and ... Guatemala in the south.
14. The boss reads two newspapers a day: ... *New York Times* and ... *Wall Street Journal*.
15. Karen went to ... Harvard, while her sister went to ... University of Indiana.
16. ... Renaissance began in Italy during the fourteenth century.
17. While we were in Washington D.C., we visited ... White House and ... Smithsonian Museum.

**Exercise 2. Read the descriptions of famous places written by learners. They made some mistakes on the use of articles. Correct the underlined phrases if necessary. What cities are they describing?**

1. River Seine flows through this city. It's famous for its tower which gives a wonderful view across the city. It's called the Eiffel Tower. There's a world famous art gallery called Louvre. Just outside the city is Palace of Versailles.
2. The city is divided in two by Bosphorus Sea. Half of it is in the Asia and half is in Europe. It has many beautiful old buildings including the Blue Mosque and Archeological Museum. It used to be called the Constantinople.
3. The city has a long history and is also called the Eternal City. Two thousand years ago it was the centre of Roman Empire. It is placed on the banks of Tiber. Home of Catholic Church and Vatican City it is full of beautiful ancient churches and cathedrals including the St. Peter's Basilica and the Basilica of St. Paul.

**Exercise 3. Translate into English paying attention to the use of articles with proper nouns.**

1. Лувр – один из крупнейших художественных музеев мира.
2. Выйдя из поезда, он увидел тот самый Минск, который покинул 10 лет назад.
3. В 1996 году Банк федерального резерва США начал выпуск долларов нового образца.
4. Дядюшка Чарли уехал на юг Франции еще в прошлом году.
5. Старик Альфред выслушал новость без удивления.
6. Вам нравится эта картина? Это Шишкин.
7. Стоунхендж – гигантская каменная загадка в Южной Англии.
8. Где находится штаб-квартира Европейского парламента: в Гааге или в Брюсселе?
9. Давид Ливингстон погиб в Центральной Африке.
10. Она предпочитает проводить лето на Ривьере.
11. Я бы не хотел жить в Англии времен королевы Елизаветы I, в эпоху мрачного Средневековья.
12. Канарские острова принадлежат Испании.
13. 320 км побережья Тосканы на западе омываются Тирренским морем.
14. Он сейчас проживает у некой Мисс Браун.
15. Умница Питер всегда знает ответы на все вопросы.
16. Во Францию была отправлена большая партия памятников Древнего Египта.

17. Самолет приземлился в аэропорту Майами.
18. Мы заказали номер на двоих в Гранд отеле.
19. Я никогда не забуду Париж 1945 года.
20. Посмотрите на фотографию красавицы Моника.

## THE USE OF ARTICLES IN SOME SYNTACTIC PATTERNS

In some syntactic patterns we observe certain peculiarities in the use of articles. This refers mainly to the use of articles with nouns functioning as **predicatives** or in **apposition**.

**The Predicative** is an element of the sentence which completes a compound nominal predicate. It is always used after a link verb and is expressed by nominal parts of speech: nouns, adjectives, pronouns, numerals, verbals with nominal features (infinitives, gerunds).

*She is a pretty **child**. She looks **good**. The guns were **his**. I 'm only **46**. June's first thought was **to go away**.*

**The Apposition** is a peculiar attribute expressed by a noun or nominal phrase which refers to another noun or nominal phrase. The apposition may give another name to the person or non-person.

*I saw the clerk in charge, **a very dubious-looking individual**.*

**The Indefinite Article (a / an)** is used in its **classifying** function with countable singular nouns used as **predicatives** or in **apposition**. With plural nouns the **Zero Article** is used.

*'I am **a socialist**, of course,' he said.*

*All my friends were (-) **students**.*

*I'm sure you know Alfred Hard, **a professor at London University**.*

*My friends, (-) **all students then**, formed a political party.*

Predicative and appositive nouns can be modified by a **descriptive attribute** (the indefinite article is used in the classifying function).

*He was **an extremely boring fellow**.*

*Hart, **an uneasy nervous man**, often broke into flashes of speech.*

Singular appositive nouns, preceded by the indefinite article denote a person or work of art that is **not widely known**:

*'Pericles', **a comedy of Shakespeare**, is hardly ever staged.*

**The Definite Article (*the*)** is used when:

- 1) predicative or appositive nouns are modified by a **restrictive attribute** (the specifying function of the definite article);

*She was **the only person who tried to govern my movements.***

*Then Jack, **the most impudent person there, interrupted me.***

- 2) appositive nouns denote a **well-known** person or work of art.

*John Galsworthy, **the famous English writer, was of a Devonshire family.***

**The Zero Article (-)** is used when:

- 1) predicative and appositive nouns denote the position (rank, state, post or occupation) that is unique. In such cases the definite article is also possible.

*George Buswell had eventually become (-) **governor of the State.***

*Mr. Dobson, (-) **director of the theatre, takes an optimistic view of prospects.***

*Harold Stackhurst, **the headmaster, and several other teachers taught the students and prepared them for various professions.***

**Note!** Mind the difference between the usage of the definite (*the*) and the zero (-) articles in such cases.

- 2) *It was nearly 40 years before she became (-) **Queen.*** – The focus is on someone's role.

***The Queen** is strongly against the project.* – Personal characteristics are important.

- 3) predicative and appositive nouns acquire adjectival character and are followed by **enough**;

*He isn't (-) **fool enough** to believe that sort of thing.*

- 4) predicative nouns are used in clauses of concession with inverted word order;

*(-) **Child** though she was, she had suffered much.*

*(-) **Boy** as he was, he was chosen their leader.*

- 5) predicative nouns are used in set expressions with the verb **to turn**: *to turn traitor, to turn pirate, to turn miser*;

- 6) when the same noun is repeated after the prepositions **from ... to ...**: *from tree to tree, from street to street, from sentence to sentence, from day to day, from word to word*;

- 7) nouns are used in the following combinations: *a kind of (-) **man, the kind of (-) **man, a sort of (-) **man, the sort of (-) **man, a type of (-) **man, the type of (-) **man, etc.*************;

8) nouns are used in direct addresses;

*How is my wife, (-) **doctor**?*

*Well, (-) **young man**, what can I do for you?*

9) nouns are used in absolute constructions.

*She was entering the train, (-) **ticket in hand**.*

*She made two more steps and waited, (-) **head half turned**.*

**Variants** (*a*, *the*, -) are possible with predicative and appositive nouns are used:

1) after the verbs *to appoint*, *to choose*, *to elect*, *to call*, etc.;

*They appointed him **a member** of the delegation.*

*They appointed him (-) **secretary** of the new committee.*

*He was elected **the President** of the country.*

2) when they denote a relationship (*son*, *daughter*, etc.).

*She is **the daughter** of a doctor.* (to express mere relationship)

*She is **a daughter** of a doctor.* (The doctor has more than one daughter.)

*She is (-) **daughter** of a doctor.* (The social position of the person is emphasized.)

### **Examples of comments**

1. *'Pericles', **a comedy of Shakespeare**, is hardly ever staged.*

The indefinite article is used with a countable appositive noun in the singular in its classifying function. The appositive noun denotes a work of the art that is not widely known.

2. *He was **an extremely boring fellow**.*

The indefinite article is used with a countable predicative noun in the singular modified by a descriptive attribute in its classifying function.

3. *She was **the only person** who tried to govern my movements.*

The definite article is used with a countable predicative noun in the singular in its specifying function. The specification is carried out by means of a restrictive attribute and a restrictive attributive clause.

4. *John Galsworthy, **the famous English writer**, was of a Devonshire family.*

The definite article is used with a countable appositive noun in the singular in its specifying function. The specification is provided by the situation. A well-known person is meant.

5. *George Buswell had eventually become (-) **governor of the State**.*

The zero article is used with a countable predicative noun in the singular in its classifying function. A unique position is meant.

**Exercise 1. Comment on the use of articles in some syntactic patterns.**

1. He was *a lawyer* by profession.
2. He now arranged with Spender, *editor of 'Times Literary Supplement'*, to write articles on current French Literature.
3. Aunt Laura was *the widow of an auctioneer*.
4. We sat *side by side* smoking and thinking.
5. For some days Hotchkinston, *the solicitor to whom Eden had deputed the case*, sent me on news.
6. When Murry was appointed *editor of 'The Literary Gazette'* his salary became eight hundred a year.
7. Grant is indifferent to *that sort of thing*.
8. They made him *a major-general* after he left the headquarters.
9. What *a long way* you have travelled since your first book!
10. The girl he loved was Laura Merton, *the daughter of a retired colonel who had lost his temper and his digestion in India*.
11. 'Well, *boy*, you are not going out tonight, are you?' his mother asked.

**Exercise 2. Supply the correct article with nouns used as predicatives.**

1. Jasper was ... son of my father's elder brother.
2. My father had been ... Chairman of an organization of doctors in New York.
3. As it was, she was ... best-looking woman there.
4. He was ... talkative fellow.
5. We were ... children of our class and time.
6. 'Heavens! Look at the dog. Or is he ... lion?' 'He comes from Newfoundland and he's more ... lamb than ... lion.'
7. Hart was ... uneasy nervous man who broke into flashes of speech.
8. I wouldn't be ... Prime Minister if they asked me on their knees.
9. Johnson is made ... secretary of the club.
10. John could not make up his mind about the blackmail. He had been led to think that McGrath himself was ... blackmailer, at least ... blackmailer because he had the personality to be ... blackmailer.

**Exercise 3. Choose the correct continuation of the sentences. In some cases more than one variant is possible.**

1. She was ...	a) the wife of a doctor. b) a wife of the doctor. c) the wife of the doctor.
----------------	--

2. Philip was not ...	a) a humbug but a hard and realistic man. b) the humbug but a hard and realistic man. c) humbug but a hard and realistic man.
3. Mr. Knight was ...	a) excessively lazy man, who preferred to sit down. b) an excessively lazy man, who preferred to sit down. c) the excessively lazy man, who preferred to sit down.
4. It's a girl called Betsy. She's ...	a) boss's secretary. b) a boss's secretary. c) the boss's secretary.
5. Henry Greene was ...	a) a son of a general. b) the son of a general. c) son of the general.
6. It seemed that Aunt Milly had been ...	a) only relative to offer practical help. b) an only relative to offer practical help. c) the only relative to offer practical help.
7. His study was ...	a) the darkest room in a house. b) the darkest room in the house. c) a darkest room in the house.
8. His father was ...	a) good soldier. b) a good soldier. c) the good soldier.
9. I might be ...	a) a leader of the party instead of you. b) the leader of a party instead of you. c) the leader of the party instead of you.
10. She is proud of being ...	a) daughter of a poet. b) the daughter of the poet. c) the daughter of a poet.
11. I'm going to be ...	a) president of this company. b) a president of this company. c) the president of this company.
12. This fellow is ...	a) man I want for the job. b) a man I want for the job. c) the man I want for the job.
13. 'We are merely ...	a) a tourists,' Tom said. b) the tourists,' Tom said. c) tourists,' Tom said.
14. 'She is ...	a) a very silly creature,' he said. b) the very silly creature,' he said. c) very silly creature,' he said.
16. 'I call it ...	a) a mediocre play,' he said. b) the mediocre play,' he said. c) mediocre play,' he said.

**Exercise 4. Supply the correct article with nouns used in apposition.**

1. He had been to the tomb of Hafiz, ... poet.
2. Two men, ... two passengers, came along the gangway, and she amused herself by trying to guess whether they were single or married.
3. Charles was dancing with his cousin, ... good-looking girl.
4. Even Mr. March, ... most realistic man there, could not forgive me.
5. They drove up to the terminal, ... brightly lighted and air-conditioned building.
6. I was chatting with the man's wife, ... lady in purple trousers, when he was called to the telephone.
7. He accepted ... post of ... secretary to a diplomatic mission.
8. In the rear of the car, Margaret Howden, ... wife of the president of the firm, said to her husband: 'You look tired.'
9. He's Doctor Evans, ... nephew of your host tonight.
10. Then Rudy saw ... professor Denton, ... head of ... History and Economics department.

**Exercise 5. Tick the sentences with nouns in apposition that are correct.**

1. After I turned 17, my father, a travelling man, sent me to study at this university.
2. Sometimes Herbert, a big boy of sixteen now, would challenge another kite-flyer.
3. Hautin, the lawyer by profession, had business dealings in the town.
4. Maidenhead, river resort, is one of the loveliest reaches of the River Thames.
5. His father, a missionary, was killed in the uprising.
6. Here is Doctor Sheppard, the close friend of poor Roger's.
7. Hopkin's car, a black Cadillac five years old, was driven by an ageing Negro chauffeur.
8. I've arranged for you to call tomorrow on a friend of his, an editor.
9. They live in Lynton, a small village in Devonshire.
10. On the way across the river he chatted to the boatman, a local man.

**Exercise 6. Choose all the possible variants in the sentences below. In some cases more than one variant is possible.**

1. Prynne was *manager* / *a manager* / *the manager* of the estate up the river.
2. Across from her sat Delaney, *producer* / *a producer* / *the producer* of the picture.
3. What odd *collection* / *an odd collection* / *the odd collection* you've got in here!
4. With a face like yours I'd be at least *president* / *a president* / *the president* of a steel company.

5. I said: 'This is Mary Summers, *old school friend / an old school friend / the old school friend* of mine.'
6. *Admiral Lacey / an Admiral Lacey / the Admiral Lacey* was *red-faced man / a red-faced man / the red-faced man*.
7. Then he walked down Broadway, *main street / a main street / the main street* of the town.
8. They sat in the drawing room round the portable wireless, *present / a present / the present* from Fleur.
9. Mr. Richardson was *owner / an owner / the owner* and editor-in-chief of the publishing house.
10. She was *daughter / a daughter / the daughter* of a well-known theatrical manager.
11. My friend Herbert Holt is *professor / a professor / the professor* of English literature in one of the universities of the Middle West.
12. 'Yeats is one of *greatest poets / the greatest poets* of the age,' I said.
13. He was at that time *lieutenant / a lieutenant / the lieutenant* in the British Army.
14. Rudy had *gift / a gift / the gift* of being liked. That was why he had been elected *president / a president / the president* of his class three times in a row.

**Exercise 7. Supply the correct article: *a, the, (-)*.**

1. At the time I was ... manager of ... Crawford Street branch of ... bank.
2. I saw ... group of ... workmen coming toward us. One of them was ... fat, red-faced man, and I presume he was ... foreman.
3. His wife and Sheila were ... active, strong women, who loved using their muscles.
4. The waiter was an old friend of mine, and at that season he was boots, porter, chambermaid and cook as well.
5. I think it is ... place I will choose.
6. Human being is ... wonderful thing.
7. I was ... editor of our college paper.
8. She is ... most honest person I think I've ever met.
9. This was ... warmly carpeted, restful, sunny room with ... superb view of ... river.
10. All Edward wants at this moment is ... change of ... clothes and ... meal.
11. He was ... manager of ... largest estate in ... district.
12. ... man who wore glasses was ... husband of Mrs. Holt.

### **Exercise 8. Correct the mistakes if it is necessary.**

1. She was the only Liberal in their family.
2. What kind of the place are your friends living in?
3. The sun was hanging over the hill behind them, the large red ball which had lost its fierceness.
4. After some most astonishing adventures in new Guinea he made himself king of some wild tribe.
5. He was a man who wandered mysteriously from the hotel to the hotel.
6. No, you are getting this quite wrong. She's the wife of a friend of mine.
7. Phillip's wife, a biggest snob in the family, invited me to tea.
8. Then we were joined by the two women, acquaintances of Charles and Anna.
9. Nurse Everett, bony woman of fifty, opened the door.
10. He would be given a post of the Minister of Justice.
11. It was the sort of the occasion when one wants to help but doesn't know how.

### **Out-of-class Work**

#### **Exercise 1. Supply the correct article: *a/an, the, (-)*.**

1. Benton was ... pretty little village with ... definite character of its own.
2. He assumed ... role of ... breadwinner for the family.
3. ... General Holt withdrew his plan.
4. How long have you been ... secretary?
5. Grant got little information from Andy, ... mail-car driver.
6. They had launch at Hexley, ... small village on ... coast.
7. It was ... lovely landscape. It was idyllic, poetical and it inspired me.
8. 'I'm ... sportsman,' I said. 'Rowing is my favourite sport.'
9. This is ... terrible thing for you, my poor child.
10. We spoke to Phillip's secretary, ... youngish man called Williams.
11. Within a short time, Gregory married Zalia Phelps, ... daughter of Angus Phelps, ... planter in Georgia.
12. To look at Montmorency you would imagine that he was ... angel sent upon ... earth.
13. I fell to the ground yelling. Waters, ... gym teacher, carried me off the field.
14. She was ... small woman, ... little shorter than Roy and considerably thinner.
15. I am ... old man who is afraid of no one.
16. He was their favourite nephew, ... son of their dead elder sister.
17. Sam, ... man who ran the elevator, didn't like Peter.
18. ... town of Windsor is ... typically English town.
19. When Doctor Lewelyn retires I might be ... head doctor in his place.
20. Smiley, ... captain of ... team, got up on the bench and told them of his plant.

## Exercise 2. Translate into English.

1. Байрон, великий английский поэт, сражался за свободу Греции.
2. Нам очень понравился их дом, небольшое двухэтажное строение на берегу реки.
3. Он президент маленькой Южно-Африканской Республики.
4. У президента состоялись переговоры с премьер-министром.
5. Зимний дворец был спроектирован архитектором Растрелли.
6. «Овод», известный роман Л. Войнич, был переведен на многие языки.
7. По этому случаю она надела свое самое лучшее платье – подарок тети Энн.
8. Виктория Азаренко, известная белорусская спортсменка, начала заниматься теннисом в 7 лет.
9. На Рождество тетушка Мэрион и дядя Джон приезжают повидать нас.
10. Картина, небольшое полотно, стояла целое состояние.
11. Профессор Браун был избран деканом математического факультета.
12. Мистер Блэк, президент компании, сейчас подойдет.
13. Мэри, очаровательная девушка, несла в руках букет ландышей.
14. Федор Бондарчук, известный российский актер и кинорежиссер, впервые появился в кино в фильме «Борис Годунов».
15. Мы все ждем июля, самого теплого месяца лета.
16. Линкольн был президентом США во время Гражданской войны.
17. В каком возрасте Ваш отец стал ректором университета?
18. Несмотря на то, что Джеймс был ребенком, он понимал всю серьезность положения.
19. Я не настолько глуп, чтобы следовать его советам.
20. Беранже, знаменитый французский поэт, родился в 1780 г. В детстве он жил с дедом, бедным парижским портным.

### ARTICLES.

### REVISION

## Exercise 1. Match the sentences in each group with their meanings, A, B, and C, as in the example.

- |   |          |
|---|----------|
| 1. Teachers are often blamed for failures in education                | <u>B</u> |
| 2. The teacher is often blamed for failures in education.             | ___      |
| 3. The teachers were blamed for failures in the boy's education.      | ___      |
| A. This describes specific teachers at one school.                    |          |
| B. This describes teachers in general.                                |          |
| C. This describes teachers in general and is used in formal contexts. |          |

2. 1. We'll have lunch in a restaurant in Burton Street. \_\_\_\_\_  
 2. We'll have lunch in the restaurant in Burton Street. \_\_\_\_\_  
 3. We'll have lunch in the restaurant that does the two course special. \_\_\_\_\_  
 A. We know which restaurant – the only one in Burton Street or the one we usually go to.  
 B. We know which restaurant because we've defined it.  
 C. We don't know which restaurant – there are several in Burton Street.
3. 1. The Swiss are known for their neutrality in times of conflict. \_\_\_\_\_  
 2. By winning this latest event, the Swiss has ended a magnificent year. \_\_\_\_\_  
 A. This talks about one person. \_\_\_\_\_  
 B. This talks about a group of people.
4. 1. Lewis has been in hospital for several weeks. \_\_\_\_\_  
 2. Lewis has been at the hospital for several weeks. \_\_\_\_\_  
 A. Lewis is a builder doing a job that is taking several weeks.  
 B. Lewis has been ill for several weeks.
5. 1. Most psychologists feel it is better to release anger than to suppress it. \_\_\_\_\_  
 2. I couldn't contain the anger I felt when I read the article. \_\_\_\_\_  
 A. This talks about a feeling in general.  
 B. This talks about a feeling on a special occasion.

**Exercise 2. Choose the most suitable option.**

1. Brenda is *the* / (-) ideal for *a* / *the* job. She has *a* / (-) wealth of *the* / (-) experience.
2. *The* / (-) safety at *the* / (-) work is *a* / (-) major concern for us.
3. *The* / (-) poorest people in *the* / (-) country live in this city.
4. Have you seen *a* / *the* new 'Hamlet' at *the* / (-) National Theatre.
5. There is *a* / (-) beautiful countryside within *an* / (-) easy reach of *a* / *the* hotel.
6. I have *a* / (-) terrible cold and am staying in *the* / (-) bed today.
7. I earn £3 an / the hour as *a* / (-) supermarket cashier on *the* / (-) Saturdays.
8. *The* / (-) charge for *an* / (-) excess luggage is £10 *a* / *the* kilo.
9. *The* / (-) most of *the* / (-) life is *a* / (-) matter of getting on with *the* / (-) others.
10. This country is officially called *the* / (-) United Kingdom of *the* / (-) Great Britain and *the* / (-) Northern Ireland.

**Exercise 3. In each space put *a* / *an* or *the*, or leave the space blank.**

1. I'm going to stand for Parliament at ... next election.
2. When I left ... station, I had to stand in ... queue for ... taxi for ... long time.
3. We took ... trip around London and saw ... Tower Bridge.
4. ... happiness of the majority depends on ... hard work for everyone.

5. ... most main roads in this part of ... country follow ... line of ... roads built by ... Romans.
6. If I had ... time, I would like to take up ... archery.
7. We spent ... pleasant things having ... drinks at ... Robin Hood.
8. ... Nile flows right through ... city.
9. ... summer I spent in ... USA was one of ... best in my life.

**Exercise 4. Complete the sentences with *a / an* or *the*.**

1. ... tiger is ... animal which struggles to survive in ... modern world.
2. I need ... kilo and ... half of minced beef, but I want all ... fat taken off please.
3. ... art gallery used to own ... Picasso, but it was stolen in ... daring daylight robbery.
4. ... first thing students need to appreciate is that ... laboratory can be ... dangerous place.
5. We spent ... week in Paris and had ... great time going up ... Eiffel Tower, and taking ... trip along ... Seine in ... small boat.
6. Tom Gibson, ... architect mainly responsible for ... design of ... new building, lives in ... farmhouse in ... country.
7. ...rent is €1000 ... month because ... apartment is in ... most expensive part of ... city.
8. I can never understand ... US elections, because I'm not sure I know ... difference between ... Democrats and ... Republicans.
9. ... worst thing about travelling on the motorway is that if there is ... accident, there is usually ... huge traffic jam.
10. My dad is down at ... pub having ... drink with ... other members of ... pub-quiz team.

**Exercise 5. Complete the sentences with *a / an* or *the*.**

1. After weeks of worry with servants Christine chanced on Mrs. Bennett, ... widow of forty, clean and hard-working, who because of her daughter, ... child of seven, had found it almost impossible to find a job.
2. On his first day he went round with Doctor Eustace Thoroughgood, ... elderly man of fifty.
3. He was ... pretty baby and then ... good-looking child.
4. Jan's hand between his was ... anchor holding him steady in ... world they had built together.
5. Every time I meet you you're a different person. – That's probably because you are ... different person, too.

6. There seemed to be no reason why he should not eventually be made ... Governor.
7. It is ... exceedingly bad little painting. One of ... worst I have ever seen.
8. On the way back to our compartment we passed Natalie Winter. She was ... very shy woman. She was also ... star of season.
9. If anyone could tell her what Mr. Potter wanted to know, Mrs. Ferguson was ... woman.
10. Even before George introduced me I knew that ... man was ... senior partner.

**Exercise 6. Read this story and complete it with the correct article: *a / an, the* or (-).**

I first experienced (1) ... terror when I was seven. My parents were living in (2) ... wartime London when I was born, but my father died when I was one and my mother decided to leave (3) ... city and move to (4) ... countryside. (5) ... great-aunt of hers lived in (6) ... cottage in (7) ... North Wales, and there she brought me up in (8) ... relative peace and security. (9) ... locals were all very friendly to us and accepted us without (10) ... question, and I had (11) ... blissful childhood.

One day I arrived (12) ... home from (13) ... school to find my mother clutching ... telegram, in floods of tears. (14) ... telegram informed her that her father – my grandfather – had died. His funeral would be in three days and we had to go to London. I had never been outside (15) ... village and I was really excited at (16) ... thought of going to (17) ... capital city. So, two days later, we boarded (18) ... train to London. It was (19) ... first time I had been on a train and I was overwhelmed by (20) ... excitement of such (21) ... adventure. Several hours later we arrived. I clutched my mother's hand as we stepped down from (22) ... train. (23) ... station was full of people rushing from (24) ... work and it was quite dark. Now (25) ... fear was starting to creep into my mind. Then, suddenly we were in (26) ... street outside (27) ... station. I had never seen so many people, buses and cars, nor heard so much noise. I was terrified. I opened my mouth and the wail that I let escape was one of (28) ... sheer terror.

**Exercise 7. Find and correct the mistakes in seven of these sentences.**

1. Training courses for several companies are held at university in the summer.
2. Have you seen a such beautiful sight?
3. We don't have many books on ancient history. They are on a shelf near the back.
4. New measures are being put in place to help unemployed find work.

5. Many parents say that the happiness of holding one's first child is never surpassed.
6. Could you take some more chairs into a garden? We're expecting about 20 people.
7. The children under twelve aren't allowed in to see this film without an adult.
8. The Venus flytraps are an example of a carnivorous plant.
9. Linda Gray was sentenced to three months at the prison for her role in the robbery.
10. Many elderly people value the domestic cat for its companionship.

**Exercise 8. Read the following information about the Scout Movement. Write eleven more missing articles in the correct places.**

Scout Movement has rich and exciting history which has led to it becoming leading global youth movement of today. Here you can find information about founder of movement, Lord Baden-Powell, and other interesting facts about scouting.

There are more than 28 million Scouts, young people and adults, male and female, in 160 countries and territories. Some 300 million people have been Scouts, including prominent people in every field.

This is impressive, considering that scouting began with twenty boys and experimental camp in 1907 on Brownsea Island, near Poole in Dorset, England. Camp was a great success and proved to its organizer, Robert Baden-Powell, that his training and methods appealed to young people and really worked.

In January 1908, he published first *Scouting for Boys*, a book issued in fortnightly parts at four pence each. It was immediate success. Baden-Powell had only intended to provide method of training boys, something that existing youth organisations could adopt.

To his surprise, youngsters started to organize themselves into what was destined to become – and is today – world's largest voluntary youth movement.

**Exercise 9. Find and correct ten more mistakes with articles.**

MAC: Oh, Carl. I've been meaning to ask you. How did your job interview go?

CARL: It was fine. They offered me the job.

MAC: Really? That's great. Where's it based?

CARL: In their headquarters in *the* city centre.

MAC Oh, of course. It's the Supersave. You told me last week.

CARL: Yes, that's right.

MAC: Is it a big organisation?

CARL: Huge – over the hundred thousand employees.

MAC: Will you like that?

CARL: I think so. In my last job I was manager in a really small company, but there was nowhere to go from there.

MAC: And now you're back to being a salesman again – it'll be a long way up!

CARL: All better! It gives me something to aim for.

MAC: Is it an American company?

CARL: Well, it's from Netherlands originally, but it's based here now.

MAC: Where did you see the ad for the job?

CARL: It was in *Herald Tribune*, but it was the smallest job ad I'd ever seen. I could easily have missed it.

MAC: Maybe they didn't want hundreds of applicants! Will you have to travel much now?

CARL: Yeah, probably. They said in the interview they thought I'd be away two weeks the month on average.

MAC: Janey won't like that ...

CARL: No, but she'll like some of other aspects of the job, like the sports centre membership. She'll be able to play a tennis whenever she wants, free.

MAC: That sounds good. Well, congratulations, let me shake the hand.

**Exercise 10. Complete the text with *a / an* or *the*, or leave blank for zero article.**

(1) ... Great Wall of (2) ... China is one of (3) ... wonders of (4) ... modern world, and became (5) ... UNESCO Heritage site in 1987. It is (6) ... one of (7) ... longest (6.700 km) structures in (8) ... world, and has (9) ... history of more than (10) ... two thousand years. (11) ... building of (12) ... wall began between (13) ... 7<sup>th</sup> and 8<sup>th</sup> centuries BC as (14) ... means of defending most of (15) ... China from (16) ... invading people of (17) ... north. (18) ... rulers of different parts of (19) ... country built sections of (20) ... wall, and these were joined together in (21) ... time of (22) ... Qin dynasty. During (23) ... Ming dynasty (1368–1644 AD) (24) ... wall was repaired and extended and took on (25) ... appearance it has today, with (26) ... complex system of (27) ... forts and towers. It has (28) ... average height of ten metres and (29) ... width of five metres, and it runs from (30) ... east to (31) ... west.

**Exercise 11. Complete the sentence with *a / an* or *the*, or leave blank for zero article.**

1. ... British are famous (or notorious) for ... amount of ... fast food they eat.
2. We went on ... field trip to ... Lake District as part of ... final year geography course.

3. Jim is at ... work at ... moment. He's ... personal trainer.
4. ... story begins on ... quiet afternoon at ... end of ... July.
5. Can I have ... coffee in ... glass with ... milk, please.
6. Helen works at ... hospital at ... end of ... road.
7. Peter was in ... bed with ... attack of ... flu.
8. ... film was shot on ... location in ... Philippines.
9. On my way to ... work in ... morning I usually buy ... paper before I get on ... bus.
10. When he's on ... duty at ... prison, Jack has to wear ... uniform.

**Exercise 12. Complete the text with *a / an* or *the*, or leave blank for *zero* article.**

(1) ... Dominican Republic is (2) ... country of approximately 8 million people, and is located on (3) ... eastern two-thirds of (4) ... Caribbean island of (5) ... Hispaniola, which is (6) ... second largest of (7) ... Greater Antilles islands. (8) ... western part of (9) ... island forms (10) ... Republic of (11) ... Haiti. (12) ... capital of (13) ... country is (14) ... city of (15) ... Santo Domingo and is located in (16) ... southern part of (17) ... island. (18) ... second largest city is (19) ... Santiago. (20) ... country has three major mountain ranges, and (21) ... highest peak is (22) ... Pico Duarte (3,175m). (23) ... geography of (24) ... country is varied, and ranges from (25) ... semi-desert plains to (26) ... lush valleys of tropical rainforest. (27) ... economy depends largely on (28) ... agriculture, with (29) ... sugar as (30) ... main crop, though (31) ... mining and (32) ... tourism are also important.

**Exercise 13. In each space put *a / an* or *the*, or leave the space blank.**

It has been announced that for (1) ... third consecutive month there has been (2) ... rise in (3) ... number of (4) ... people unemployed, rather than (5) ... fall that had been predicted. (6) ... rise was blamed on (7) ... continuing uncertainty over (8) ... government economic policy, and couldn't come at (9) ... worse time for (10) ... Prime Minister, who is facing (11) ... growing criticism over (12) ... way (13) ... present crisis is being handled. (14) ... MPs are increasingly voicing (15) ... fears that despite (16) ... recent devaluation of (17) ... pound and cuts in (18) ... interest rates, (19) ... government still expects (20) ... recovery of the economy to take three or even four years. To make (21) ... matters worse, (22) ... number of small businesses going into (23) ... liquidation is still at (24) ... record level, and (25) ... housing market is showing no signs of recovery. Some backbenches expect (26) ... general election before (27) ... end of (28) ... winter unless there is (29) ... rapid change of (30) fortune.

**Exercise 14. There are eleven extra appearances of *the* in the following text. Find them.**

The word processor and the calculator are without a shadow of doubt here to stay, and in the many respects our lives are the much richer without them. But the teachers and other academics are claiming that we are now starting to feel the first significant wave of their effects on a generation of the users. It seems nobody under the age of 20 can spell or add up any more. Even several professors at leading universities have commented on the detrimental effect the digital revolution has had on the most intelligent young minds in the country. The problem, evidently, lies with the automatic spellcheck now widely available on the word processing software. Professor John Silver of the Sydney University, Australia, said: ‘Why should we bother to learn how to spell correctly, or for that matter to learn even the most basic of the mathematical sums, when at the press of a button we have our problem answered for us. The implications are enormous. Will the adults of the future look to the computer to make the decisions for them, to tell them who to marry or what the house to buy? Are we heading for a future individual incapable of the independent human thoughts.

**ARTICLES.  
SELF-CHECK**

**Complete these sentences with *a / an, the* or *(-)*.**

1. He’s got ... asthma.
2. While they went from ... room to ... room, Blair explained the purpose of his visit.
3. The ring is just a band of ... gold.
4. Sunday came fine, as she had hoped, ... soft spring day.
5. It prints seven pages ... minute.
6. This is ... last time I do you ... favour for a while.
7. I’m staying in ... Hilton so you can leave me ... message.
8. It’s the tallest building in ... United Arab Emirates.
9. I don’t like ... milk in ... coffee.
10. Let’s have a weekend in ... Pyrenees.
11. They reduced the price by ... third.
12. ... James Joyce I knew wasn’t ... novelist and wasn’t ... Irish either.
13. I know he is ... sculptor.
14. We’ll go for ... walk if ... sun comes out.
15. It’s in ... Tasman Sea.

16. It appeared in ... *New York Times*.
17. What's for ... dinner?
18. I'll meet you in ... Central Park.
19. Go down ... High Street and turn right into ... Mill Road.
20. Please let me carry ... shopping. It's ... least I can do.
21. They're flying to ... Seychelles.
22. At ... end of ... busy day ... sleep is ... best tonic.
23. Katherine was ... wife of ... poor clerk in ... Ministry of Education.
24. There's a list on ... page 20.
25. Can you ski on ... Mont Blanc?
26. How well does he play ... baseball?
27. We all need ... oxygen.
28. We've had over ... hundred applicants.
29. Then the second case came in, ... woman of forty-five, Miss Basden, one of ... most faithful of his followers.
30. He has a job in ... television.
31. Harry worked as ... architect all his life.
32. She was ... first woman to cross ... Atlantic in ... canoe.
33. The earlier you can get here, ... better.
34. She works for a magazine called ... *Hello*.
35. He turned to me and said, 'What ... extraordinary names these boys seem to have!'
36. They've made me ... head of the department,' he whispered.

### ANSWER KEY

1. He's got (-) asthma.
2. While they went from (-) room to (-) room, Blair explained the purpose of his visit.
3. The ring is just a band of (-) gold.
4. Sunday came fine, as she had hoped, **a** soft spring day.
5. It prints seven pages **a** minute.
6. This is **the** last time I do you **a** favour for a while.
7. I'm staying in **the** Hilton so you can leave me **a** message.
8. It's the tallest building in **the** United Arab Emirates.
9. I don't like (-) milk in (-) coffee.
10. Let's have a weekend in **the** Pyrenees.
11. They reduced the price by **a** third.
12. **The** James Joyce I knew wasn't **a** novelist and wasn't (-) Irish either.

13. I know he is **a** sculptor.
14. We'll go for **a** walk if **the** sun comes out.
15. It's in **the** Tasman Sea.
16. It appeared in **the** *New York Times*.
17. What's for (-) dinner?
18. I'll meet you in (-) Central Park.
19. Go down **the** High Street and turn right into (-) Mill Road.
20. Please let me carry **the** shopping. It's **the** least I can do.
21. They're flying to **the** Seychelles.
22. At **the** end of a busy day (-) sleep is **the** best tonic.
23. Katherine was **the** / (-) wife of **a** poor clerk in **the** Ministry of Education.
24. There's a list on (-) page 20.
25. Can you ski on (-) Mont Blanc?
26. How well does he play (-) baseball?
27. We all need (-) oxygen.
28. We've had over **a** hundred applicants.
29. Then the second case came in, **a** woman of forty-five, Miss Basden, one of **the** most faithful of his followers.
30. He has a job in (-) television.
31. Harry worked as **an** architect all his life.
32. She was **the** first woman to cross **the** Atlantic in **a** canoe.
33. The earlier you can get here, **the** better.
34. She works for a magazine called (-) *Hello*.
35. He turned to me and said, 'What (-) extraordinary names these boys seem to have!'
36. They've made me **the** / (-) head of the department,' he whispered.

## REFERENCES

1. *Березина, О. А.* Упражнения по грамматике. Структура английского предложения : учеб. пособие / О. А. Березина. – СПб. : ООО «ИнТязиздат», 2005. – 160 с. – (Специальная литература по иностранным языкам).
2. *Блох, М. Я.* Практикум по английскому языку : Грамматика. Сборник упражнений : учеб. пособие для вузов / М. Я. Блох, А. Я. Лебедева, В. С. Денисова. – М. : Изд-во «Астрель» : Изд-во «АСТ», 2000. – 240 с.
3. *Герасименко, А. П.* Superbook. Английская грамматика по шуткам и карикатурам : учебник / А. П. Герасименко. – М. : КНОРУС, 2008. – 188 с.
4. *Дмитриева, И. В.* Сборник таблиц по практической грамматике английского языка : учеб. пособие / И. В. Дмитриева. – Минск : МГЛУ, 2000. – 47 с.
5. *Карневская, Е. Б.* Практическая грамматика английского языка = Practical English Grammar. The English Verb. The Noun, the Numeral, Subject-Predicate Agreement : учебник для высшей школы / Е. Б. Карневская, З. Д. Курочкина, И. Н. Вихрева, А. В. Бенедиктович, Т. Г. Сосно, М. И. Симанович, Л. И. Трибис, Р. В. Фастовец. – 5-е изд. – М. : Аверсэв, 2017. – 480 с.
6. *Крылова, И. П.* Сборник упражнений по грамматике английского языка = A Grammar of Present-day English. Practice Book : учеб. пособие / И. П. Крылова. – 16-е изд. – М. : Книжный дом «Университет», 2017. – 426 с.
7. *Крылова, И. П.* Употребление артиклей в современном английском языке = The Use of Articles in Modern English : практ. пособие / И. П. Крылова, Е. М. Гордон. – 2-е изд., испр. и доп. – М. : Лист Нью, 2002. – 160 с.
8. *Петрашкевич, Н. П.* Функциональная грамматика английского языка = Grammar-Perfect : Functional View : учеб. пособие / Н. П. Петрашкевич, Л. А. Шелег, И. В. Дмитриева. – 3-е изд. – Минск : Лексис, 2014. – 270 с.
9. *Семенова, Н. П.* Практическая грамматика английского языка : Артикль. = Practical English Grammar : the Article : учеб. пособие / Н. П. Семенова [и др.]. – Минск : Лексис, 2016. – 152 с.
10. *Симхович, В. А.* Практическая грамматика английского языка : учеб. пособие / В. А. Симхович. – Минск : «Экоперспектива», 2001. – 400 с.

11. *Христорождественская, Л. П.* Английский язык / Л. П. Христорождественская. – М. : Эксмо, 2007. – Ч. 1. – 560 с.
12. *Alexander, L. G.* Longman English Grammar / L. G. Alexander. – Pearson Education Limited, 2003. – 351 p.
13. *Claire, E.* Three Little Words : A, an and The : A Foreign Student's Guide to English Articles / E. Claire. – Delta Systems Company, Incorporated, 1998. – 60 p.
14. *Dooley, J.* Grammarway 4 with answers / J. Dooley, V. Evans. – Berkshire : Express Publishing, 1999. – 278 p.
15. *Downing, A.* A University Course in English Grammar / A. Downing, Ph. Locke. – Englewood : Prentice Hall, 2006. – 610 p.
16. *Eastwood, J.* Oxford Practice Grammar / J. Eastwood. – Oxford : Oxford University Press, 2002 – 425 p.
17. *Evans, V.* Round-up 6 : English Grammar Book / V. Evans, J. Dooley. – Pearson Longman, 2003. – 260 p.
18. *Foley, M.* MyGrammarLab. Advanced C1-C2 / M. Foley, D. Hall. – Pearson Education Limited, 2012. – 411 p.
19. *Foley, M.* MyGrammarLab. Intermediate B1-B2 / M. Foley, D. Hall. – Pearson Education Limited, 2012. – 373 p.
20. *Fuchs, M.* Focus on Grammar 4 : An Integrated Skills Approach / M. Fuchs, M. Bonner. – Longman : Pearson Longman, 2005. – 467 p.
21. *Larsen-Freeman, D.* The Grammar Book / D. Larsen-Freeman. – National Geographic Learning : HEINLE CENGAGE learning, 2016. – 911 p.
22. *Mann, M.* Destination C1&C2. Grammar & Vocabulary with Answer Keys / M. Mann, S. Taylore-Knowles. – Oxford : Macmillan Publishers Limited, 2009. – 312 p.
23. *Side, R.* Grammar an Vocabulary for Cambridge Advanced and Proficiency with key / R. Side, G. Wellman. – Longman, 1999. – 286 p.
24. *Side, R.* Grammar and Vocabulary for Cambridge Advanced and Proficiency / R. Side. – Longman : Pearson Education Limited, 2011. – 288 p.
25. *Swan, M.* The Good Grammar Book / M. Swan. – Oxford : Oxford University Press, 2003. – 317 p.
26. *Thomson, A. J.* A Practical English Grammar / A. J. Thomson. – Oxford : Oxford University Press, 2010 – 383 p.
27. *Vince, M.* Advanced Language Practice : with key. English Grammar and Vocabulary / M. Vince, P. Sunderland. – Oxford : Macmillan Publishers Limited, 2003. – 326 p.

28. *Vince, M.* Macmillan English Grammar in Context / M. Vince. – Oxford : Macmillan Publishers Limited, 2007. – 232 p.
29. *Walker, E.* Grammar Practice for Upper Intermediate Students / E. Walker. – Longman : Pearson Education Limited, 2000. – 204 p.
30. *Walcyn-Jones, P.* Test Your Grammar and Usage for FCE / P. Walcyn-Jones. – Longman : Pearson Education Limited, 2002. – 137 p.
31. *Woodward, S.* Fun with Grammar / S. Woodward. – Prentice Hall Regents, 1997. – 354 p.

Учебное издание

**Аношина** Ольга Владимировна  
**Крымовская** Мария Дмитриевна  
**Чучкевич** Ирина Валентиновна

**ПРАКТИЧЕСКАЯ ГРАММАТИКА АНГЛИЙСКОГО ЯЗЫКА  
В ПОДГОТОВКЕ СПЕЦИАЛИСТОВ ПО ПЕРЕВОДУ**

*Пособие*

Ответственный за выпуск *О. В. Аношина*

Редактор *Е. И. Ковалёва*  
Компьютерная верстка *Т. С. Соловьевой*

Подписано в печать 01.04.2021. Формат 60×84 <sup>1</sup>/<sub>16</sub>. Бумага офсетная. Гарнитура Таймс. Ризография. Усл. печ. л. 13,02. Уч.-изд. л. 11,50. Тираж 200 экз. Заказ 19.

Издатель и полиграфическое исполнение: учреждение образования «Минский государственный лингвистический университет». Свидетельство о государственной регистрации издателя, изготовителя, распространителя печатных изданий от 02.06.2017 г. № 3/1499. ЛП № 02330/458 от 23.01.2014 г.

Адрес: ул. Захарова, 21, 220034, г. Минск.